

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations
and is not a part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,
please do not report the images to the
Image Problems Mailbox.**



P.B.5818 – Patentlaan 2
2280 HV Rijswijk (ZH)
S +31 70 340 2040
T 31651 epo nl
FAX +31 70 340 3016

Europäisches
Patentamt

Zweigstelle
in Den Haag
Recherchen-
abteilung

European
Patent Office

Branch at
The Hague
Search
division

Office européen
des brevets

Département à
La Haye
Division de la
recherche

Kyle, Diana
Elkington and Fife
Prospect House
8 Pembroke Road
Sevenoaks, Kent TN13 1XR
GRANDE BRETAGNE

RECEIVED

08 JAN 2003

E. & F. SEVENOAKS

COPIED FOR COMPUTER

Datum/Date

08.01.03

Zeichen/Ref./Réf.	Anmeldung Nr./Application No./Demande n°./Patent Nr./Patent No./Brevet n°.
DK/G15506EP	99903901.9-2117-JP9900541
Anmelder/Applicant/Demandeur/Patentinhaber/Proprietor/Titulaire	
Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd.	

COMMUNICATION

The European Patent Office herewith transmits as an enclosure the European search report for the above-mentioned European patent application.

If applicable, copies of the documents cited in the European search report are attached.

- Additional set(s) of copies of the documents cited in the European search report is (are) enclosed as well.

REFUND OF THE SEARCH FEE

If applicable under Article 10 Rules relating to fees, a separate communication from the Receiving Section on the refund of the search fee will be sent later.





DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT			
Category	Citation of document with indication, where appropriate, of relevant passages	Relevant to claim	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int.Cl.6)
A	M. HANAFI ET AL.: "UK-2A, B, C AND D, NOVEL ANTIFUNGAL ANTIBIOTICS FROM STREPTOMYCES SP. 517-02" JOURNAL OF ANTIBIOTICS., vol. 49, no. 12, December 1996 (1996-12), pages 1226-31, XP002224747 JAPAN ANTIBIOTICS RESEARCH ASSOCIATION. TOKYO., JP ISSN: 0021-8820 * page 1226; figure 1 *	1-5, 11-18	C07D321/00 C07D405/12 A61K31/335 A61K31/44 A61K31/505 A01N43/40 A61P31/00
A	M. UEKI: "THE MODE OF ACTION OF UK-2A AND UK-3A, NOVEL ANTIFUNGAL ANTIBIOTICS FROM STREPTOMYCES SP. 517-02" JOURNAL OF ANTIBIOTICS., vol. 50, no. 12, December 1997 (1997-12), pages 1052-7, XP002224748 JAPAN ANTIBIOTICS RESEARCH ASSOCIATION. TOKYO., JP ISSN: 0021-8820 * page 1052 *	1-5, 11-18	
			TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int.Cl.6)
			C07D A61K A61P
The supplementary search report has been based on the last set of claims valid and available at the start of the search.			
1	Place of search	Date of completion of the search	Examiner
	THE HAGUE	12 December 2002	Francois, J
CATEGORY OF CITED DOCUMENTS		T : theory or principle underlying the invention E : earlier patent document, but published on, or after the filing date D : document cited in the application L : document cited for other reasons & : member of the same patent family, corresponding document	
X : particularly relevant if taken alone Y : particularly relevant if combined with another document of the same category A : technological background O : non-written disclosure P : intermediate document			
EPO FORM 1503 03 B2 (P04C04)			

ATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

PCT

NOTIFICATION OF ELECTION

(PCT Rule 61.2)

To:

United States Patent and Trademark
Office
(Box PCT)
Crystal Plaza 2
Washington, DC 20231
ÉTATS-UNIS D'AMÉRIQUE

Date of mailing: 12 August 1999 (12.08.99)	in its capacity as elected Office
International application No.: PCT/JP99/00541	Applicant's or agent's file reference: 118545-506
International filing date: 08 February 1999 (08.02.99)	Priority date: 06 February 1998 (06.02.98)
Applicant: SAKANAKA, Osamu et al	

1. The designated Office is hereby notified of its election made:

in the demand filed with the International preliminary Examining Authority on:
11 June 1999 (11.06.99)

in a notice effecting later election filed with the International Bureau on:

2. The election was

was not

made before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date or, where Rule 32 applies, within the time limit under Rule 32.2(b).

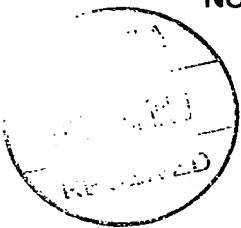
The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35	Authorized officer: J. Zahra Telephone No.: (41-22) 338.83.38
---	--

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

NOTIFICATION OF RECEIPT OF
RECORD COPY

(PCT Rule 24.2(a))



From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

SATO, Kazuo
 Kyowa Patent & Law Office, Room
 323, Fuji Bld.,
 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome,
 Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-0005
 JAPON

Date of mailing (day/month/year) 15 March 1999 (15.03.99)	IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION
Applicant's or agent's file reference 118545-506	International application No. PCT/JP99/00541

The applicant is hereby notified that the International Bureau has received the record copy of the international application as detailed below.

Name(s) of the applicant(s) and State(s) for which they are applicants:

MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD. (for all designated States except US)
 SAKANAKA, Osamu et al (for US)

International filing date : 08 February 1999 (08.02.99)
 Priority date(s) claimed : 06 February 1998 (06.02.98)

Date of receipt of the record copy by the International Bureau : 19 February 1999 (19.02.99)

List of designated Offices :

AP : GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW
 EA : AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM
 EP : AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE
 OA : BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG
 National : AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW

ATTENTION

The applicant should carefully check the data appearing in this Notification. In case of any discrepancy between these data and the indications in the international application, the applicant should immediately inform the International Bureau.

In addition, the applicant's attention is drawn to the information contained in the Annex, relating to:

- time limits for entry into the national phase
- confirmation of precautionary designations
- requirements regarding priority documents

A copy of this Notification is being sent to the receiving Office and to the International Searching Authority.

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No. (41-22) 740.14.35	Authorized officer: M. Sakai Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38
--	--

INFORMATION ON TIME LIMITS FOR ENTERING THE NATIONAL PHASE

The applicant is reminded that the "national phase" must be entered before each of the designated Offices indicated in the Notification of Receipt of Record Copy (Form PCT/IB/301) by paying national fees and furnishing translations, as prescribed by the applicable national laws.

The time limit for performing these procedural acts is **20 MONTHS** from the priority date or, for those designated States which the applicant elects in a demand for international preliminary examination or in a later election, **30 MONTHS** from the priority date, provided that the election is made before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date. Some designated (or elected) Offices have fixed time limits which expire even later than 20 or 30 months from the priority date. In other Offices an extension of time or grace period, in some cases upon payment of an additional fee, is available.

In addition to these procedural acts, the applicant may also have to comply with other special requirements applicable in certain Offices. It is the applicant's responsibility to ensure that the necessary steps to enter the national phase are taken in a timely fashion. Most designated Offices do not issue reminders to applicants in connection with the entry into the national phase.

For detailed information about the procedural acts to be performed to enter the national phase before each designated Office, the applicable time limits and possible extensions of time or grace periods, and any other requirements, see the relevant Chapters of Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide. Information about the requirements for filing a demand for international preliminary examination is set out in Chapter IX of Volume I of the PCT Applicant's Guide.

GR and ES became bound by PCT Chapter II on 7 September 1996 and 6 September 1997, respectively, and may, therefore, be elected in a demand or a later election filed on or after 7 September 1996 and 6 September 1997, respectively, regardless of the filing date of the international application. (See second paragraph above.)

Note that only an applicant who is a national or resident of a PCT Contracting State which is bound by Chapter II has the right to file a demand for international preliminary examination.

CONFIRMATION OF PRECAUTIONARY DESIGNATIONS

This notification lists only specific designations made under Rule 4.9(a) in the request. It is important to check that these designations are correct. Errors in designations can be corrected where precautionary designations have been made under Rule 4.9(b). The applicant is hereby reminded that any precautionary designations may be confirmed according to Rule 4.9(c) before the expiration of 15 months from the priority date. If it is not confirmed, it will automatically be regarded as withdrawn by the applicant. There will be no reminder and no invitation. Confirmation of a designation consists of the filing of a notice specifying the designated State concerned (with an indication of the kind of protection or treatment desired) and the payment of the designation and confirmation fees. Confirmation must reach the receiving Office within the 15-month time limit.

REQUIREMENTS REGARDING PRIORITY DOCUMENTS

For applicants who have not yet complied with the requirements regarding priority documents, the following is recalled:

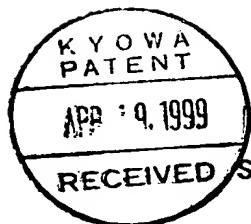
Where the priority of an earlier national, regional or international application is claimed, the applicant must submit a copy of the said earlier application, certified by the authority with which it was filed ("the priority document") to the receiving Office (which will transmit it to the International Bureau) or directly to the International Bureau, before the expiration of 16 months from the priority date, provided that any such priority document may still be submitted to the International Bureau before that date of international publication of the international application, in which case that document will be considered to have been received by the International Bureau on the last day of the 16-month time limit (Rule 17.1(a)).

Where the priority document is issued by the receiving Office, the applicant may, instead of submitting the priority document, request the receiving Office to prepare and transmit the priority document to the International Bureau. Such request must be made before the expiration of the 16-month time limit and may be subjected by the receiving Office to the payment of a fee (Rule 17.1(b)).

If the priority document concerned is not submitted to the International Bureau or if the request to the receiving Office to prepare and transmit the priority document has not been made (and the corresponding fee, if any, paid) within the applicable time limit indicated under the preceding paragraphs, any designated State may disregard the priority claim, provided that no designated Office may disregard the priority claim concerned before giving the applicant an opportunity to furnish the priority document within a time limit which is reasonable under the circumstances.

Where several priorities are claimed, the priority date to be considered for the purposes of computing the 16-month time limit is the filing date of the earliest application whose priority is claimed.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY



PCT

NOTIFICATION CONCERNING
SUBMISSION OR TRANSMITTAL
OF PRIORITY DOCUMENT

(PCT Administrative Instructions, Section 411)

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

SATO, Kazuo
 Kyowa Patent & Law Office
 Fuji Building, Room 323
 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome
 Chiyoda-ku
 Tokyo 100-0005
 JAPON

Date of mailing (day/month/year) 12 April 1999 (12.04.99)	
Applicant's or agent's file reference 118545-506	IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION
International application No. PCT/JP99/00541	International filing date (day/month/year) 08 February 1999 (08.02.99)
International publication date (day/month/year) Not yet published	Priority date (day/month/year) 06 February 1998 (06.02.98)
Applicant MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD. et al	

1. The applicant is hereby notified of the date of receipt (except where the letters "NR" appear in the right-hand column) by the International Bureau of the priority document(s) relating to the earlier application(s) indicated below. Unless otherwise indicated by an asterisk appearing next to a date of receipt, or by the letters "NR", in the right-hand column, the priority document concerned was submitted or transmitted to the International Bureau in compliance with Rule 17.1(a) or (b).
2. This updates and replaces any previously issued notification concerning submission or transmittal of priority documents.
3. An asterisk(*) appearing next to a date of receipt, in the right-hand column, denotes a priority document submitted or transmitted to the International Bureau but not in compliance with Rule 17.1(a) or (b). In such a case, the attention of the applicant is directed to Rule 17.1(c) which provides that no designated Office may disregard the priority claim concerned before giving the applicant an opportunity, upon entry into the national phase, to furnish the priority document within a time limit which is reasonable under the circumstances.
4. The letters "NR" appearing in the right-hand column denote a priority document which was not received by the International Bureau or which the applicant did not request the receiving Office to prepare and transmit to the International Bureau, as provided by Rule 17.1(a) or (b), respectively. In such a case, the attention of the applicant is directed to Rule 17.1(c) which provides that no designated Office may disregard the priority claim concerned before giving the applicant an opportunity, upon entry into the national phase, to furnish the priority document within a time limit which is reasonable under the circumstances.

<u>Priority date</u>	<u>Priority application No.</u>	<u>Country or regional Office or PCT receiving Office</u>	<u>Date of receipt of priority document</u>
06 Febr 1998 (06.02.98)	10/26257	JP	26 Marc 1999 (26.03.99)

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No. (41-22) 740.14.35	Authorized officer M. Sakai  Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38
--	---

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

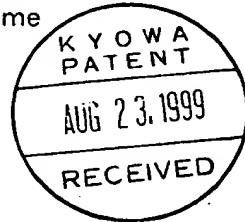
NOTICE INFORMING THE APPLICANT OF THE COMMUNICATION OF THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION TO THE DESIGNATED OFFICES

(PCT Rule 47.1(c), first sentence)

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

SATO, Kazuo
 Kyowa Patent & Law Office
 Fuji Building, Room 323
 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome
 Chiyoda-ku
 Tokyo 100-0005
 JAPON



Date of mailing (day/month/year)
 12 August 1999 (12.08.99)

Applicant's or agent's file reference
 118545-506

IMPORTANT NOTICE

International application No.
 PCT/JP99/00541

International filing date (day/month/year)
 08 February 1999 (08.02.99)

Priority date (day/month/year)
 06 February 1998 (06.02.98)

Applicant
 MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD. et al

1. Notice is hereby given that the International Bureau has communicated, as provided in Article 20, the international application to the following designated Offices on the date indicated above as the date of mailing of this Notice:
 AU,CN,EP,IL,JP,KP,KR,US

In accordance with Rule 47.1(c), third sentence, those Offices will accept the present Notice as conclusive evidence that the communication of the international application has duly taken place on the date of mailing indicated above and no copy of the international application is required to be furnished by the applicant to the designated Office(s).

2. The following designated Offices have waived the requirement for such a communication at this time:
 AL,AM,AP,AT,AZ,BA,BB,BG,BR,BY,CA,CH,CU,CZ,DE,DK,EA,EE,ES,FI,GB,GD,GE,GH,GM,HR,HU,
 ID,IN,IS,KE,KG,KZ,LC,LK,LR,LS,LT,LU,LV,MD,MG,MK,MN,MW,MX,NO,NZ,OA,PL,PT,RO,RU,SD,
 SE,SG,SI,SK,SL,TJ,TM,TR,TT,UA,UG,UZ,VN,YU,ZW
 The communication will be made to those Offices only upon their request. Furthermore, those Offices do not require the applicant to furnish a copy of the international application (Rule 49.1(a-bis)).
3. Enclosed with this Notice is a copy of the international application as published by the International Bureau on
 12 August 1999 (12.08.99) under No. WO 99/40081

REMINDER REGARDING CHAPTER II (Article 31(2)(a) and Rule 54.2)

If the applicant wishes to postpone entry into the national phase until 30 months (or later in some Offices) from the priority date, a demand for international preliminary examination must be filed with the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date.

It is the applicant's sole responsibility to monitor the 19-month time limit.

Note that only an applicant who is a national or resident of a PCT Contracting State which is bound by Chapter II has the right to file a demand for international preliminary examination.

REMINDER REGARDING ENTRY INTO THE NATIONAL PHASE (Article 22 or 39(1))

If the applicant wishes to proceed with the international application in the national phase, he must, within 20 months or 30 months, or later in some Offices, perform the acts referred to therein before each designated or elected Office.

For further important information on the time limits and acts to be performed for entering the national phase, see the Annex to Form PCT/IB/301 (Notification of Receipt of Record Copy) and Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide.

The International Bureau of WIPO
 34, chemin des Colombettes
 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

Facsimile No. (41-22) 740.14.35

Authorized officer

J. Zahra

Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INFORMATION CONCERNING ELECTED
OFFICES NOTIFIED OF THEIR ELECTION

(PCT Rule 61.3)

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

SATO, Kazuo
 Kyowa Patent & Law Office
 Fuji Building, Room 323
 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome
 Chiyoda-ku
 Tokyo 100-0005
 JAPON

Date of mailing (day/month/year)
 12 August 1999 (12.08.99)

Applicant's or agent's file reference
 118545-506

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

International application No.
 PCT/JP99/00541

International filing date (day/month/year)
 08 February 1999 (08.02.99)

Priority date (day/month/year)
 06 February 1998 (06.02.98)

Applicant
 MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD. et al

1. The applicant is hereby informed that the International Bureau has, according to Article 31(7), notified each of the following Offices of its election:

AP :GH,GM,KE,LS,MW,SD,SZ,UG,ZW
 EP :AT,BE,CH,CY,DE,DK,ES,FI,FR,GB,GR,IE,IT,LU,MC,NL,PT,SE
 National :AU,BG,BR,CA,CN,CZ,DE,GB,IL,JP,KP,KR,MN,NO,NZ,PL,RO,RU,SE,SK,US

2. The following Offices have waived the requirement for the notification of their election; the notification will be sent to them by the International Bureau only upon their request:

EA :AM,AZ,BY,KG,KZ,MD,RU,TJ,TM
 OA :BF,BJ,CF,CG,CI,CM,GA,GN,GW,ML,MR,NE,SN,TD,TG
 National :AL,AM,AT,AZ,BA,BB,BY,CH,CU,DK,EE,ES,FI,GD,GE,GH,GM,HR,HU,ID,IN,
 IS,KE,KG,KZ,LC,LK,LR,LS,LT,LU,LV,MD,MG,MK,MW,MX,PT,SD,SG,SI,SL,TJ,TM,TR,
 TT,UA,UG,UZ,VN,YU,ZW

3. The applicant is reminded that he must enter the "national phase" before the expiration of 30 months from the priority date before each of the Offices listed above. This must be done by paying the national fee(s) and furnishing, if prescribed, a translation of the international application (Article 39(1)(a)), as well as, where applicable, by furnishing a translation of any annexes of the international preliminary examination report (Article 36(3)(b) and Rule 74.1).

Some offices have fixed time limits expiring later than the above-mentioned time limit. For detailed information about the applicable time limits and the acts to be performed upon entry into the national phase before a particular Office, see Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide.

The entry into the European regional phase is postponed until 31 months from the priority date for all States designated for the purposes of obtaining a European patent.

The International Bureau of WIPO
 34, chemin des Colombettes
 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

Authorized officer:

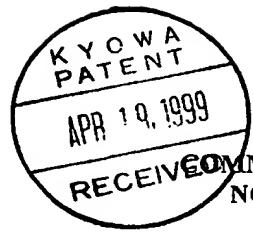
J. Zahra

Facsimile No. (41-22) 740.14.35

Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT



RECEIVE COMMUNICATION IN CASES FOR WHICH
NO OTHER FORM IS APPLICABLE

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

SATO, Kazuo
Kyowa Patent & Law Office
Fuji Building, Room 323
2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome
Chiyoda-ku
Tokyo 100-0005
JAPON

Date of mailing (day/month/year) 12 April 1999 (12.04.1999)	
Applicant's or agent's file reference 118545-506	REPLY DUE see paragraph 1 below
International application No. PCT/JP99/00541	International filing date (day/month/year) 08 February 1999 (08.02.1999)
Applicant MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD.	

1. REPLY DUE within _____ months/days from the above date of mailing
 NO REPLY DUE, however, see below
 IMPORTANT COMMUNICATION
 INFORMATION ONLY

2. COMMUNICATION:

The International Bureau acknowledges receipt, on 12 March 1999 (12.03.1999), of a sheet.

The International Bureau will publish this sheet in the pamphlet with the following entry on the cover sheet:

"With (an) indication(s) in relation to a deposited biological material furnished under Rule 13bis separately from the description."

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No. (41-22) 740.14.35	Authorized officer M. Sakai  Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38
--	--

特許協力条約

PCT

EP



国際調査報告

(法8条、法施行規則第40、41条)
[PCT18条、PCT規則43、44]

出願人又は代理人 の書類記号 118545-506	今後の手続きについては、国際調査報告の送付通知様式(PCT/ISA/220)及び下記5を参照すること。	
国際出願番号 PCT/JP99/00541	国際出願日 (日.月.年) 08.02.99	優先日 (日.月.年) 06.02.98
出願人(氏名又は名称) 明治製菓株式会社		

国際調査機関が作成したこの国際調査報告を法施行規則第41条(PCT18条)の規定に従い出願人に送付する。
この写しは国際事務局にも送付される。

この国際調査報告は、全部で 5 ページである。 この調査報告に引用された先行技術文献の写しも添付されている。

1. 国際調査報告の基礎

a. 言語は、下記に示す場合を除くほか、この国際出願がされたものに基づき国際調査を行った。
 この国際調査機関に提出された国際出願の翻訳文に基づき国際調査を行った。b. この国際出願は、ヌクレオチド又はアミノ酸配列を含んでおり、次の配列表に基づき国際調査を行った。
 この国際出願に含まれる書面による配列表 この国際出願と共に提出されたフレキシブルディスクによる配列表 出願後に、この国際調査機関に提出された書面による配列表 出願後に、この国際調査機関に提出されたフレキシブルディスクによる配列表 出願後に提出した書面による配列表が出願時における国際出願の開示の範囲を超える事項を含まない旨の陳述書の提出があった。 書面による配列表に記載した配列とフレキシブルディスクによる配列表に記録した配列が同一である旨の陳述書の提出があった。2. 請求の範囲の一部の調査ができない(第I欄参照)。3. 発明の単一性が欠如している(第II欄参照)。4. 発明の名称は 出願人が提出したものを承認する。 次に示すように国際調査機関が作成した。5. 要約は 出願人が提出したものを承認する。 第III欄に示されているように、法施行規則第47条(PCT規則38.2(b))の規定により国際調査機関が作成した。出願人は、この国際調査報告の発送の日から1ヶ月以内にこの国際調査機関に意見を提出することができる。

6. 要約書とともに公表される図は、

第 _____ 図とする。 出願人が示したとおりである。 なし 出願人は図を示さなかった。 本図は発明の特徴を一層よく表している。

第Ⅰ欄 請求の範囲の一部の調査ができないときの意見（第1ページの2の続き）

法第8条第3項（PCT17条(2)(a)）の規定により、この国際調査報告は次の理由により請求の範囲の一部について作成しなかった。

1. 請求の範囲 13, 14 つまり、人の身体の治療による処置方法を含んでいる。
2. 請求の範囲 _____ は、有意義な国際調査をすることができる程度まで所定の要件を満たしていない国際出願の部分に係るものである。つまり、
3. 請求の範囲 _____ は、従属請求の範囲であってPCT規則6.4(a)の第2文及び第3文の規定に従って記載されていない。

第Ⅱ欄 発明の単一性が欠如しているときの意見（第1ページの3の続き）

次に述べるようにこの国際出願に二以上の発明があるとこの国際調査機関は認めた。

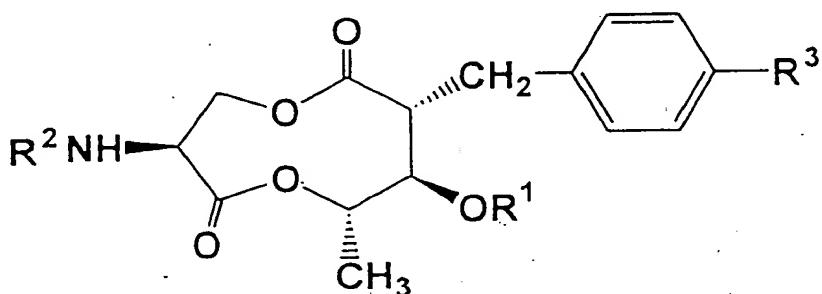
1. 出願人が必要な追加調査手数料をすべて期間内に納付したので、この国際調査報告は、すべての調査可能な請求の範囲について作成した。
2. 追加調査手数料を要求するまでもなく、すべての調査可能な請求の範囲について調査することができたので、追加調査手数料の納付を求めなかった。
3. 出願人が必要な追加調査手数料を一部のみしか期間内に納付しなかったので、この国際調査報告は、手数料の納付のあった次の請求の範囲のみについて作成した。
4. 出願人が必要な追加調査手数料を期間内に納付しなかったので、この国際調査報告は、請求の範囲の最初に記載されている発明に係る次の請求の範囲について作成した。

追加調査手数料の異議の申立てに関する注意

- 追加調査手数料の納付と共に出願人から異議申立てがあつた。
- 追加調査手数料の納付と共に出願人から異議申立てがなかつた。

第Ⅲ欄 要約（第1ページの5の続き）

下記の式(I)の化合物は、強力な抗真菌活性を有し、かつ、病害駆除の対象である人畜や農園芸植物に対して薬害を及ぼさず、さらに、光安定性の高い特質を有する。



(I)

[式中、R¹はイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、

R²は水素原子、芳香族カルボン酸残基、またはアミノ保護基を表し、

R³は水素原子、ニトロ基、アミノ基、アシルアミノ基、またはN、N-ジアルキルアミノ基を表す（但し、R¹がイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基であって、R³が水素原子であるとき、R²が3-ヒドロキシピコリン酸残基、3-ヒドロキシ-4-メトキシピコリン酸残基、または3, 4-ジメトキシピコリン酸残基である場合を除く）]

A. 発明の属する分野の分類（国際特許分類（IPC））
Int.Cl.° C07D321/00, 405/12, A61K31/335, A61K31/44, A61K31/505

B. 調査を行った分野

調査を行った最小限資料（国際特許分類（IPC））
Int.Cl.° C07D321/00, 405/00-12, A61K31/00-505

最小限資料以外の資料で調査を行った分野に含まれるもの

国際調査で使用した電子データベース（データベースの名称、調査に使用した用語）
CAPLUS(STN), REGISTRY(STN), WPI(DSTN)

C. 関連すると認められる文献

引用文献の カテゴリー*	引用文献名 及び一部の箇所が関連するときは、その関連する箇所の表示	関連する 請求の範囲の番号
A Y	JP, 7-233165, A (SUNTORY LTD) 5. 9月. 1995 (05. 09. 95) ファミリーなし	1-19 1-12, 15-18
PX PY	SHIMANO, M. ; KAMEI, N. ; SHIBATA, T. ; INOGUCHI, K. ; ITOH, N. ; IKARI, T. ; SENDA, H. Total Synthesis of Antifungal Dilactones UK-2A and UK-3A: The Determination of their Relative and Absolute Configurations, Analog Synthesis and Antifungal Activities. Tetrahedron, Vol. 54, No. 42, p. 12745-12774 (October 1998)	1, 2, 11, 12, 1-12, 15-18

C欄の続きにも文献が列挙されている。

パテントファミリーに関する別紙を参照。

* 引用文献のカテゴリー

「A」特に関連のある文献ではなく、一般的技術水準を示すもの

「E」国際出願日前の出願または特許であるが、国際出願日以後に公表されたもの

「L」優先権主張に疑義を提起する文献又は他の文献の発行日若しくは他の特別な理由を確立するために引用する文献（理由を付す）

「O」口頭による開示、使用、展示等に言及する文献

「P」国際出願日前で、かつ優先権の主張の基礎となる出願

の日の後に公表された文献

「T」国際出願日又は優先日後に公表された文献であって出願と矛盾するものではなく、発明の原理又は理論の理解のために引用するもの

「X」特に関連のある文献であって、当該文献のみで発明の新規性又は進歩性がないと考えられるもの

「Y」特に関連のある文献であって、当該文献と他の1以上の文献との、当業者にとって自明である組合せによって進歩性がないと考えられるもの

「&」同一パテントファミリー文献

国際調査を完了した日

22.04.99

国際調査報告の発送日

11.05.99

国際調査機関の名称及びあて先

日本国特許庁 (ISA/JP)

郵便番号 100-8915

東京都千代田区霞が関三丁目4番3号

特許庁審査官（権限のある職員）

齋藤 恵

4P 9164



電話番号 03-3581-1101 内線 6608

C (続き) 関連すると認められる文献

引用文献の カテゴリー*	引用文献名 及び一部の箇所が関連するときは、その関連する箇所の表示	関連する 請求の範囲の番号
A	JP, 44-235, B(KYOWA FERMENTATION INDUSTRY CO., LTD) 8.1月. 1969(08.01.69) ファミリーなし	1-12, 15-19
A	JP, 7-196489, A(KOBE STEEL LTD) 1.8月. 1969(01.08.69) ファミリーなし	1-12, 15-19

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願
国際予備審査請求書

第Ⅱ章

出願人は、次の国際出願が特許協力条約に従って国際予備審査の対象とされることを請求し、
選択資格のある全ての国を選択する。ただし、特段の表示がある場合を除く。



国際予備審査機関自己入力欄	
国際予備審査機関の確認	請求書の受理の日
第Ⅰ 材料 国際出願の表示	
国際出願番号 PCT/JP99/00541	国際出願日 (日、月、年) 08. 02. 99
	優先日 (最先のもの) (日、月、年) 06. 02. 98
発明の名称 新規抗真菌化合物とその製法	
第Ⅱ 材料 出願人	
氏名 (名称) 及びあて名 : (姓・名の順に記載; 法人は公式の完全な名称を記載; あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載)	
明治製菓株式会社 MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD. 〒104-8002 日本国東京都中央区京橋二丁目4番16号 4-16, Kyobashi 2-chome, Chuo-ku, Tokyo 104-8002 Japan	
電話番号 : ファクシミリ番号 : 加入電信番号 :	
国籍 (国名) : 日本国 JAPAN 住所 (国名) : 日本国 JAPAN	
氏名 (名称) 及びあて名 : (姓・名の順に記載; 法人は公式の完全な名称を記載; あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載)	
阪中 治 SAKANAKA, Osamu 〒250-0852 日本国神奈川県小田原市栢山788番地 明治製菓株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan	
国籍 (国名) : 日本国 JAPAN 住所 (国名) : 日本国 JAPAN	
氏名 (名称) 及びあて名 : (姓・名の順に記載; 法人は公式の完全な名称を記載; あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載)	
三友 宏一 MITOMO, Koichi 〒250-0852 日本国神奈川県小田原市栢山788番地 明治製菓株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan	
国籍 (国名) : 日本国 JAPAN 住所 (国名) : 日本国 JAPAN	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 他の出願人が候補に記載されている。	

第Ⅱ欄の続き 出願人

この第Ⅱ欄の続きを使用しないときは、この用紙を国際子機番号別表に記入すること。
氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

田村 隆由 TAMURA, Takayoshi

〒250-0852 日本国神奈川県小田原市栢山788番地

明治製菓株式会社 薬品技術研究所内

c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd.,
788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan

国籍（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

住所（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

村井 安 MURAI, Yasushi

〒250-0852 日本国神奈川県小田原市栢山788番地

明治製菓株式会社 薬品技術研究所内

c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd.,
788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan

国籍（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

住所（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

飯沼 勝春 IINUMA, Katsuharu

〒250-0852 日本国神奈川県小田原市栢山788番地

明治製菓株式会社 薬品技術研究所内

c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd.,
788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan

国籍（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

住所（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

寺岡 豪 TERAOKA, Takeshi

〒222-8567 日本国神奈川県横浜市港北区師岡町760番地

明治製菓株式会社 薬品総合研究所内

c/o Pharmaceutical Research Center, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd.,
760, Morooka-cho, Kohoku-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa 222-8567 Japan

国籍（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

住所（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

他の出願人が他の機種に記載されている。

第Ⅱ欄の統計 出願人

この第Ⅱ欄の統計を使用しないときは、この用紙を国際子供新規特許に含めないこと。
氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

葛原 喜久子 KUZUHARA, Kikuko

〒222-8567 日本国神奈川県横浜市港北区師岡町760番地

明治製薬株式会社 薬品総合研究所内

c/o Pharmaceutical Research Center, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd.,

760, Morooka-cho, Kohoku-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa 222-8567 Japan

国籍（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

住所（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

御子柴 春樹 MIKOSHIBA, Haruki

〒222-8567 日本国神奈川県横浜市港北区師岡町760番地

明治製薬株式会社 薬品総合研究所内

c/o Pharmaceutical Research Center, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd.,

760, Morooka-cho, Kohoku-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa 222-8567 Japan

国籍（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

住所（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

谷口 誠 TANIGUCHI, Makoto

〒596-0827 日本国大阪府岸和田市上松町1201-3

1201-3, Kamimatsu-cho, Kishiwada-shi, Osaka 596-0827 Japan

国籍（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

住所（国名）： 日本国 JAPAN

氏名（名称）及びあて名：（姓・名の順に記載；法人は公式の完全な名称を記載；あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載）

国籍（国名）：

住所（国名）：

他の出願人が他の統計に記載されている。

第Ⅲ欄 代理人又は共通の代表者、通知のあて名

下記に記載された者は、 代理人 又は 共通の代表者 として

既に選任された者であって、国際予備審査についても出願人を代理する者である。

今回新たに選任された者である。先に選任されていた代理人又は共通の代表者は解任された。

既に選任された代理人又は共通の代表者に加えて、特に国際予備審査機関に対する手続のために、今回新たに選任された者である。

氏名(名称)及びあて名: (姓・名の前に記載; 法人は公式の完全な名称を記載; あて名は郵便番号及び国名も記載)

6428弁理士佐藤一雄 SATO Kazuo

〒100-0005 日本国東京都千代田区丸の内三丁目2番3号

富士ビル323号 協和特許法律事務所

Kyowa Patent & Law Office, Room 323,

Fuji Bldg., 2-3, Marunouchi 3-Chome,

Chiyoda-Ku, TOKYO 100-0005 JAPAN

電話番号:

03-3211-2321

ファクシミリ番号:

03-3211-1386

加入電信番号:

0222-3275

KYOPAT J

通知のためのあて名: 代理人又は共通の代表者が選任されておらず、上記枠内に特に通知が送付されるあて名を記載している場合は、レ印を付す

第Ⅳ欄 国際予備審査並にに対する基本事項

補正に関する記述: *

1. 出願人は、次のものを基礎として国際予備審査を開始することを希望する。

出願時の国際出願を基礎とすること。

明細書に関して

出願時のものを基礎とすること。

特許協力条約第34条の規定に基づいてなされた補正を基礎とすること。

請求の範囲に関して

出願時のものを基礎とすること。

特許協力条約第19条の規定に基づいてなされた補正(添付した説明書も含む)を基礎とすること。

特許協力条約第34条の規定に基づいてなされた補正を基礎とすること。

図面に関して

出願時のものを基礎とすること。

特許協力条約第34条の規定に基づいてなされた補正を基礎とすること。

2. 出願人は、特許協力条約第19条の規定に基づく請求の範囲に関する補正を差し替えることによって考慮されることを望む。

3. 出願人は、国際予備審査の開始が優先日から2ヶ月超過まで延期されることを留む。(ただし、国際予備審査機関が、特許協力条約第19条の規定に基づき行われた補正書の専らの受領、又は当該補正を希望しない旨の出願人からの通知を受領した場合を除く(規則69.1(d))。)(この口は、特許協力条約第19条の規定に基づく期間が満了していない場合にのみ、レ印を付すことができる。)

*記入がない場合は、1)補正がないか又は国際予備審査機関が補正(原本又は写し)を受領していないときは、出願時の国際出願を基礎に予備審査が開始され、2)国際予備審査機関が、見解書又は予備審査報告書の作成開始前に補正(原本又は写し)を受領したときは、これらの補正を考慮して予備審査が開始又は続行される。

国際予備審査を行うための言語は...日本語.....であり、

国際出願の提出時の言語である。

国際調査のために提出した翻訳文の言語である。

国際出願の公開の言語である。

国際予備審査の目的のために提出した翻訳文の言語である。

第Ⅴ欄 國の選択

出願人は、選択資格のある全ての指定国(即ち、既に出願人によって指定されており、かつ特許協力条約第Ⅱ章に拘束されている国)を選択する。

ただし、出願人は次の国の選択を希望しない。

第VI欄 許可書類

この国際予備審査請求書には、国際予備審査のために、第IVに記載する言語による書類が添付されている。

国際予備審査請求書自己入欄

	受領	未受領
1. 国際出願の翻訳文	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. 特許協力条約第34条の規定に基づく補正書	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. 特許協力条約第19条の規定に基づく補正書 (又は、要求された場合は翻訳文)の写し	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. 特許協力条約第19条の規定に基づく説明書 (又は、要求された場合は翻訳文)の写し	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. 書簡	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. その他 (書類名を具体的に記載する) :	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

この国際予備審査請求書には、さらに下記の書類が添付されている。

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 手数料計算用紙 | 3. <input type="checkbox"/> 包括委任状の写し |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 納付する手数料に相当する特許印紙を貼付した書面 | 4. <input type="checkbox"/> 記名押印(署名)に関する説明書 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 国際事務局の口座への振込を証明する書面 | 5. <input type="checkbox"/> ノタリオチド又はアミノ酸配列表 |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> 別個の記名押印された委任状 | 6. <input type="checkbox"/> その他 (書類名を具体的に記載する) : |

第VII欄 提出者の自己名押印

各人の氏名(名称)を記載し、その次に押印する。

佐藤一雄

1. 国際予備審査請求書の実際の受理の日

国際予備審査請求書自己入欄

2. 規則 60.1(b)の規定による国際予備審査請求書の受理の日の訂正後の日付

3. 優先日から19月を経過後の国際予備審査請求書の受理。ただし、以下の4、5の項目にはあてはまらない。

出願人に通知した。

4. 規則 80.5により延長が認められている優先日から19月の期間内の国際予備審査請求書の受理5. 優先日から19月を経過後の国際予備審査請求書の受理であるが規則82により認められる。

国際特許局自己入欄

国際予備審査請求書の国際予備審査機関からの受領の日:

特許協力条約

発信人 日本国特許庁（国際予備審査機関）

出願人代理人

佐藤 一雄

殿

PCT

あて名

〒 100-0005
東京都千代田区丸の内三丁目2番3号
富士ビル323号
協和特許法律事務所

国際予備審査報告の送付の通知書

(法施行規則第57条)
(PCT規則71.1)発送日
(日.月.年)

14.03.00

出願人又は代理人

の書類記号 118545-506

重要な通知

国際出願番号

PCT/JP99/00541

国際出願日

(日.月.年) 08.02.99

優先日

(日.月.年) 06.02.98

出願人（氏名又は名称）

明治製菓株式会社

1. 国際予備審査機関は、この国際出願に関して国際予備審査報告及び付属書類が作成されている場合には、それらをこの送付書とともに送付することを、出願人に通知する。
2. 国際予備審査報告及び付属書類が作成されている場合には、すべての選択官庁に通知するために、それらの写しを国際事務局に送付する。
3. 選択官庁から要求があったときは、国際事務局は国際予備審査報告（付属書類を除く）の英語の翻訳文を作成し、それをその選択官庁に送付する。
4. 注意

出願人は、各選択官庁に対し優先日から3ヶ月以内に（官庁によってはもっと遅く）所定の手続（翻訳文の提出及び国内手数料の支払い）をしなければならない（PCT39条（1））（様式PCT/IB/301とともに国際事務局から送付された注を参照）。

国際出願の翻訳文が選択官庁に提出された場合には、その翻訳文は、国際予備審査報告の付属書類の翻訳文を含まなければならない。

この翻訳文を作成し、関係する選択官庁に直接送付するのは出願人の責任である。

選択官庁が適用する期間及び要件の詳細については、PCT出願人の手引き第II巻を参照すること。



名称及びあて名 日本国特許庁（IPEA/JP） 郵便番号 100-8915 東京都千代田区霞が関三丁目4番3号	権限のある職員 特許庁長官	4 P	9164
電話番号 03-3581-1101 内線 3490			

特許協力条約

PCT

国際予備審査報告

(法第12条、法施行規則第56条)
〔PCT36条及びPCT規則70〕

出願人又は代理人 の書類記号 118545-506	今後の手続きについては、国際予備審査報告の送付通知（様式PCT/IPEA/416）を参照すること。	
国際出願番号 PCT/JP99/00541	国際出願日 (日.月.年) 08.02.99	優先日 (日.月.年) 06.02.98
国際特許分類 (IPC) Int.Cl. 7 C07D321/00, 405/12, A61K31/335, 44, 505, A61P31/10		
出願人（氏名又は名称） 明治製菓株式会社		

1. 国際予備審査機関が作成したこの国際予備審査報告を法施行規則第57条（PCT36条）の規定に従い送付する。

2. この国際予備審査報告は、この表紙を含めて全部で 4 ページからなる。

この国際予備審査報告には、附属書類、つまり補正されて、この報告の基礎とされた及び／又はこの国際予備審査機関に対して訂正を含む明細書、請求の範囲及び／又は図面も添付されている。
(PCT規則70.16及びPCT実施細則第607号参照)
この附属書類は、全部で ページである。

3. この国際予備審査報告は、次の内容を含む。

- I 国際予備審査報告の基礎
- II 優先権
- III 新規性、進歩性又は産業上の利用可能性についての国際予備審査報告の不作成
- IV 発明の単一性の欠如
- V PCT35条(2)に規定する新規性、進歩性又は産業上の利用可能性についての見解、それを裏付けるための文献及び説明
- VI ある種の引用文献
- VII 国際出願の不備
- VIII 国際出願に対する意見

国際予備審査の請求書を受理した日 11.06.99	国際予備審査報告を作成した日 02.03.00
名称及びあて先 日本国特許庁 (IPEA/JP) 郵便番号 100-8915 東京都千代田区霞が関三丁目4番3号	特許庁審査官（権限のある職員） 齊藤 恵 電話番号 03-3581-1101 内線 3490
	4P 9164

I. 国際予備審査報告の基礎

1. この国際予備審査報告は下記の出願書類に基づいて作成された。(法第6条(PCT14条)の規定に基づく命令に応答するために提出された差し替え用紙は、この報告書において「出願時」とし、本報告書には添付しない。PCT規則70.16, 70.17)

 出願時の国際出願書類

- | | | |
|---|--------|----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 明細書 第 _____ | ページ、 | 出願時に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 明細書 第 _____ | ページ、 | 国際予備審査の請求書と共に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 明細書 第 _____ | ページ、 | 付の書簡と共に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 請求の範囲 第 _____ | 項、 | 出願時に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 請求の範囲 第 _____ | 項、 | PCT19条の規定に基づき補正されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 請求の範囲 第 _____ | 項、 | 国際予備審査の請求書と共に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 請求の範囲 第 _____ | 項、 | 付の書簡と共に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 図面 第 _____ | ページ/図、 | 出願時に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 図面 第 _____ | ページ/図、 | 国際予備審査の請求書と共に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 図面 第 _____ | ページ/図、 | 付の書簡と共に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 明細書の配列表の部分 第 _____ | ページ、 | 出願時に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 明細書の配列表の部分 第 _____ | ページ、 | 国際予備審査の請求書と共に提出されたもの |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 明細書の配列表の部分 第 _____ | ページ、 | 付の書簡と共に提出されたもの |

2. 上記の出願書類の言語は、下記に示す場合を除くほか、この国際出願の言語である。

上記の書類は、下記の言語である _____ 語である。

- 國際調査のために提出されたPCT規則23.1(b)にいう翻訳文の言語
- PCT規則48.3(b)にいう国際公開の言語
- 国際予備審査のために提出されたPCT規則55.2または55.3にいう翻訳文の言語

3. この国際出願は、ヌクレオチド又はアミノ酸配列を含んでおり、次の配列表に基づき国際予備審査報告を行った。

- この国際出願に含まれる書面による配列表
- この国際出願と共に提出されたフレキシブルディスクによる配列表
- 出願後に、この国際予備審査(または調査)機関に提出された書面による配列表
- 出願後に、この国際予備審査(または調査)機関に提出されたフレキシブルディスクによる配列表
- 出願後に提出した書面による配列表が出願時における国際出願の開示の範囲を超える事項を含まない旨の陳述書の提出があった
- 書面による配列表に記載した配列とフレキシブルディスクによる配列表に記録した配列が同一である旨の陳述書の提出があった。

4. 補正により、下記の書類が削除された。

- 明細書 第 _____ ページ
- 請求の範囲 第 _____ 項
- 図面 図面の第 _____ ページ/図

5. この国際予備審査報告は、補充欄に示したように、補正が出願時における開示の範囲を越えてされたものと認められるので、その補正がされなかったものとして作成した。(PCT規則70.2(c) この補正を含む差し替え用紙は上記1.における判断の際に考慮しなければならず、本報告に添付する。)

III. 新規性、進歩性又は産業上の利用可能性についての国際予備審査報告の不作成

1. 次に関して、当該請求の範囲に記載されている発明の新規性、進歩性又は産業上の利用可能性につき、次の理由により審査しない。

国際出願全体

請求の範囲 13

理由：

この国際出願又は請求の範囲 13 は、国際予備審査をすることを要しない
次の事項を内容としている（具体的に記載すること）。
人の身体の治療による処置方法である。

明細書、請求の範囲若しくは図面（次に示す部分）又は請求の範囲 の
記載が、不明確であるため、見解を示すことができない（具体的に記載すること）。

全部の請求の範囲又は請求の範囲 が、明細書による十分な
裏付けを欠くため、見解を示すことができない。

請求の範囲 13 について、国際調査報告が作成されていない。

2. ヌクレオチド又はアミノ酸の配列表が実施細則の附属書C（塩基配列又はアミノ酸配列を含む明細書等の作成のためのガイドライン）に定める基準を満たしていないので、有効な国際予備審査をすることができない。

書面による配列表が提出されていない又は所定の基準を満たしていない。

フレキシブルディスクによる配列表が提出されていない又は所定の基準を満たしていない。

V. 新規性、進歩性又は産業上の利用可能性についての法第12条（PCT35条(2)）に定める見解、それを裏付ける文献及び説明

1. 見解

新規性 (N)

請求の範囲 1-12, 14-19 有
請求の範囲 _____ 無

進歩性 (I S)

請求の範囲 1-12, 14-19 有
請求の範囲 _____ 無

産業上の利用可能性 (I A)

請求の範囲 1-12, 14-19 有
請求の範囲 _____ 無

2. 文献及び説明 (PCT規則70.7)

国際調査報告には、以下の文献が示されている。

文献 1 / JP, 7-233165, A
文献 2 / JP, 44-235, B
文献 3 / JP, 7-196489, A

請求の範囲 1-12, 14-19 に記載された化合物、その使用、真菌の発生および繁殖を予防駆除する方法、真菌感染症の治療方法、抗真近在、化合物の製造法は、国際調査報告に示されたいずれの文献にも記載されておらず、これら文献の記載から自明のものでもない。

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

**NOTIFICATION OF TRANSMITTAL
OF COPIES OF TRANSLATION
OF THE INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY
EXAMINATION REPORT**

(PCT Rule 72.2)

Date of mailing (day/month/year) 17 August 2000 (17.08.00)	
Applicant's or agent's file reference 118545-506	
International application No. PCT/JP99/00541	International filing date (day/month/year) 08 February 1999 (08.02.99)
Applicant MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD. et al	

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

SATO, Kazuo
 Kyowa Patent & Law Office
 Fuji Building, Room 323
 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome
 Chiyoda-ku
 Tokyo 100-0005
 JAPON

**IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION**
1. Transmittal of the translation to the applicant.

The International Bureau transmits herewith a copy of the English translation made by the International Bureau of the international preliminary examination report established by the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

2. Transmittal of the copy of the translation to the elected Offices.

The International Bureau notifies the applicant that copies of that translation have been transmitted to the following elected Offices requiring such translation:

EP,AT,AU,BR,CA,CH,CN,CZ,FI,KP,NO,NZ,PL,RO,RU,SK,US

The following elected Offices, having waived the requirement for such a transmittal at this time, will receive copies of that translation from the International Bureau only upon their request:

AP,EA,AL,AM,AZ,BA,BB,BG,BY,CU,DE,DK,EE,ES,GB,GD,GE,GH,GM,HR,HU,ID,IL,IN,IS,JP,KE,
 KG,KR,KZ,LC,LK,LR,LS,LT,LU,LV,MD,MG,MK,MN,MW,MX,PT,SD,SE,SG,SI,SL,TJ,TM,TR,TT,UA,
 UG,UZ,VN,YU,ZW,OA

3. Reminder regarding translation into (one of) the official language(s) of the elected Office(s).

The applicant is reminded that, where a translation of the international application must be furnished to an elected Office, that translation must contain a translation of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report.

It is the applicant's responsibility to prepare and furnish such translation directly to each elected Office concerned (Rule 74.1). See Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide for further details.

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No. (41-22) 740.14.35	Authorized officer Luis Hernandez Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38
--	---

147
Translation

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 118545-506	FOR FURTHER ACTION See Notification of Transmittal of International Preliminary Examination Report (Form PCT/IPEA/416)	
International application No. PCT/JP99/00541	International filing date (day/month/year) 08 February 1999 (08.02.99)	Priority date (day/month/year) 06 February 1998 (06.02.98)
International Patent Classification (IPC) or national classification and IPC C07D 321/00, 405/12, A61K 31/335, 31/44, 31/505		
Applicant MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD.		

1. This international preliminary examination report has been prepared by this International Preliminary Examining Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 36.
2. This REPORT consists of a total of <u>4</u> sheets, including this cover sheet.
<input type="checkbox"/> This report is also accompanied by ANNEXES, i.e., sheets of the description, claims and/or drawings which have been amended and are the basis for this report and/or sheets containing rectifications made before this Authority (see Rule 70.16 and Section 607 of the Administrative Instructions under the PCT). These annexes consist of a total of _____ sheets.
3. This report contains indications relating to the following items: I <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Basis of the report II <input type="checkbox"/> Priority III <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability IV <input type="checkbox"/> Lack of unity of invention V <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement VI <input type="checkbox"/> Certain documents cited VII <input type="checkbox"/> Certain defects in the international application VIII <input type="checkbox"/> Certain observations on the international application

Date of submission of the demand 11 June 1999 (11.06.99)	Date of completion of this report 02 March 2000 (02.03.2000)
Name and mailing address of the IPEA/JP	Authorized officer
Facsimile No.	Telephone No.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP99/00541

I. Basis of the report

1. With regard to the elements of the international application:^{*} the international application as originally filed the description:

pages _____, as originally filed

pages _____, filed with the demand

pages _____, filed with the letter of _____

 the claims:

pages _____, as originally filed

pages _____, as amended (together with any statement under Article 19)

pages _____, filed with the demand

pages _____, filed with the letter of _____

 the drawings:

pages _____, as originally filed

pages _____, filed with the demand

pages _____, filed with the letter of _____

 the sequence listing part of the description:

pages _____, as originally filed

pages _____, filed with the demand

pages _____, filed with the letter of _____

2. With regard to the language, all the elements marked above were available or furnished to this Authority in the language in which the international application was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.

These elements were available or furnished to this Authority in the following language _____ which is:

 the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (under Rule 23.1(b)). the language of publication of the international application (under Rule 48.3(b)). the language of the translation furnished for the purposes of international preliminary examination (under Rule 55.2 and/or 55.3).

3. With regard to any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosed in the international application, the international preliminary examination was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:

 contained in the international application in written form. filed together with the international application in computer readable form. furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form. furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form. The statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished. The statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished.4. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of: the description, pages _____ the claims, Nos. _____ the drawings, sheets/fig _____5. This report has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed, as indicated in the Supplemental Box (Rule 70.2(c)).^{**}

* Replacement sheets which have been furnished to the receiving Office in response to an invitation under Article 14 are referred to in this report as "originally filed" and are not annexed to this report since they do not contain amendments (Rule 70.16 and 70.17).

** Any replacement sheet containing such amendments must be referred to under item 1 and annexed to this report.

III. Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability

1. The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been examined in respect of:

- the entire international application.
 claims Nos. _____ 13

because:

- the said international application, or the said claims Nos. _____ 13
relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international preliminary examination (*specify*):

The subject matter of Claim 13 relates to a method for treatment of the human body by therapy.

- the description, claims or drawings (*indicate particular elements below*) or said claims Nos. _____
are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):

- the claims, or said claims Nos. _____ are so inadequately supported
by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed.
 no international search report has been established for said claims Nos. _____ 13

2. A meaningful international preliminary examination cannot be carried out due to the failure of the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing to comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions:

- the written form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.
 the computer readable form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP99/00541

V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement**1. Statement**

Novelty (N)	Claims	1-12,14-19	YES
	Claims		NO
Inventive step (IS)	Claims	1-12,14-19	YES
	Claims		NO
Industrial applicability (IA)	Claims	1-12,14-19	YES
	Claims		NO

2. Citations and explanations

The following documents are cited in the international search report.

Document 1: JP, 7-233165, A

Document 2: JP, 44-235, B

Document 3: JP, 7-196489, A

The compounds described in Claims 1-12 and 14-19, their use, the method for prevention and extermination of true fungi; the method f treatment of fungal infections, antifungal preparation, and manufacturing process for said compounds are not described in any of the documents cited in the international search report and are not obvious from the descriptions in those documents.

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本（出願用） - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22. 02. 1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

118545-506

0-1	受理官庁記入欄 国際出願番号	
0-2	国際出願日	
0-3	(受付印)	
0-4	この特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書(様式 - PCT/R0/101)は、右記によって作成された。	PCT-EASY Version 2.81 (updated 01. 01. 1999)
0-5	申立て 出願人は、この国際出願が特許協力条約に従って処理されることを請求する。	
0-6	出願人によって指定された受理官庁	日本国特許庁 (R0/JP)
0-7	出願人又は代理人の書類記号	118545-506
T	発明の名称	新規抗真菌化合物とその製法
II	出願人 II-1 この欄に記載した者は II-2 右の指定国についての出願人である。 II-4ja 名称 II-4en Name II-5ja あて名: II-5en Address:	出願人である (applicant only) 米国を除くすべての指定国 (all designated States except US) 明治製薬株式会社 MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD. 104-8002 日本国 東京都 中央区 京橋二丁目4番16号 4-16, Kyobashi 2-chome, Chuo-ku, Tokyo 104-8002 Japan
II-6	国籍 (国名)	日本国 JP
II-7	住所 (国名)	日本国 JP

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本（出願用） - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22.02.1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

118545-506

III-1 III-1-1	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) すべての指定国 (all designated States)
III-1-2	右の指定国についての出願人である。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First)	阪中 治 SAKANAKA, Osamu 250-0852 日本国 神奈川県 小田原市 栢山788番地
III-1-4ja III-1-4en III-1-5ja	あて名:	明治製薬株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan
III-1-5en	Address:	
III-1-6 III-1-7	国籍(国名) 住所(国名)	日本国 JP 日本国 JP
III-2 III-2-1	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) 米国のみ (US only)
III-2-2 III-2-4ja III-2-4en III-2-5ja	右の指定国についての出願人である。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	三友 宏一 MITOMO, Koichi 250-0852 日本国 神奈川県 小田原市 栢山788番地
III-2-5en	Address:	明治製薬株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan
III-2-6 III-2-7	国籍(国名) 住所(国名)	日本国 JP 日本国 JP

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本(出願用) - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22.02.1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

118545-506

III-3 III-3-1	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) 米国のみ (US only)
III-3-2	右の指定国についての出願人で ある。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First)	田村 隆由 TAMURA, Takayoshi 250-0852 日本国 神奈川県 小田原市 栢山788番地
III-3-4ja III-3-4en III-3-5ja	あて名:	明治製薬株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan
III-3-5en	Address:	
III-3-6 III-3-7	国籍 (国名) 住所 (国名)	日本国 JP 日本国 JP
III-4 III-4-1	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) 米国のみ (US only)
III-4-2 III-4-4ja III-4-4en III-4-5ja	右の指定国についての出願人で ある。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	村井 安 MURAI, Yasushi 250-0852 日本国 神奈川県 小田原市 栢山788番地
III-4-5en	Address:	明治製薬株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan
III-4-6 III-4-7	国籍 (国名) 住所 (国名)	日本国 JP 日本国 JP

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本(出願用) - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22.02.1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

III-5 III-5-1	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) 米国のみ (US only)
III-5-2	右の指定国についての出願人で ある。 氏名(姓名)	飯沼 勝春 IINUMA, Katsuharu
III-5-4en	Name (LAST, First)	250-0852 日本国
III-5-5ja	あて名:	神奈川県 小田原市 栢山788番地
III-5-5en	Address:	明治製薬株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Technology Laboratories, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 788, Kayama, Odawara-shi, Kanagawa 250-0852 Japan
III-5-6	国籍(国名)	日本国 JP
III-5-7	住所(国名)	日本国 JP
III-6 III-6-1	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor)
III-6-2	右の指定国についての出願人で ある。 氏名(姓名)	すべての指定国 (all designated States)
III-6-4en	Name (LAST, First)	寺岡 豪 TERAOKA, Takeshi
III-6-5ja	あて名:	222-8567 日本国 神奈川県 横浜市 港北区師岡町760番地
III-6-5en	Address:	明治製薬株式会社 薬品総合研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Research Center, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 760, Morooka-cho, Kouhoku-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa 222-8567 Japan
III-6-6	国籍(国名)	日本国 JP
III-6-7	住所(国名)	日本国 JP

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本(出願用) - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22.02.1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

III-7-1 III-7-2 III-7-4ja III-7-4en III-7-5ja	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は 右の指定国についての出願人である。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) 米国のみ (US only) 葛原 喜久子 KUZUHARA, Kikuko 222-8567 日本国 神奈川県 横浜市 港北区師岡町760番地 明治製薬株式会社 薬品総合研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Research Center, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 760, Morooka-cho, Kouhoku-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa 222-8567 Japan
III-7-6 III-7-7	国籍(国名) 住所(国名)	日本国 JP 日本国 JP
III-8-1 III-8-2 III-8-4ja III-8-4en III-8-5ja	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は 右の指定国についての出願人である。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) 米国のみ (US only) 御子柴 春樹 MIKOSHIBA, Haruki 222-8567 日本国 神奈川県 横浜市 港北区師岡町760番地 明治製薬株式会社 薬品総合研究所内 c/o Pharmaceutical Research Center, Meiji Seika Kaisha, Ltd., 760, Morooka-cho, Kouhoku-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa 222-8567 Japan
III-8-5en III-8-6 III-8-7	Address: 国籍(国名) 住所(国名)	日本国 JP 日本国 JP
III-9-1 III-9-2 III-9-4ja III-9-4en III-9-5ja	その他の出願人又は発明者 この欄に記載した者は 右の指定国についての出願人である。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	出願人及び発明者である (applicant and inventor) 米国のみ (US only) 谷口 誠 TANIGUCHI, Makoto 596-0827 日本国 大阪府 岸和田市 上松町1201-3 1201-3, Kamimatsu-cho, Kishiwada-shi, Osaka 596-0827 Japan
III-9-5en III-9-6 III-9-7	Address: 国籍(国名) 住所(国名)	日本国 JP 日本国 JP

IV-1	代理人又は共通の代表者、通知のあて名 下記の者は国際機関において右記のごとく出願人のために行動する。 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	代理人 (agent) 佐藤 一雄 SATO, Kazuo 100-0005 日本国 東京都 千代田区 丸の内三丁目2番3号 富士ビル323号 協和特許法律事務所 Kyowa Patent & Law Office, Room 323, Fuji Bld., 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-0005 Japan
IV-1-2en	Address:	
IV-1-3	電話番号	03-3211-2321
IV-1-4	ファクシミリ番号	03-3211-1386
IV-1-5	電子メール	HCG03157@nifty.ne.jp
IV-2	その他の代理人 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	代理人 (agent) 小野寺 捷洋 ONODERA, Katsuumi 100-0005 日本国 東京都 千代田区 丸の内三丁目2番3号 富士ビル323号 協和特許法律事務所 Kyowa Patent & Law Office, Room 323, Fuji Bld., 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-0005 Japan
IV-2-2en	Address:	
IV-2-3	電話番号	03-3211-2321
IV-2-4	ファクシミリ番号	03-3211-1386
IV-2-5	電子メール	HCG03157@nifty.ne.jp
IV-3	その他の代理人 氏名(姓名) Name (LAST, First) あて名:	代理人 (agent) 堅田 健史 KATADA, Takeshi 100-0005 日本国 東京都 千代田区 丸の内三丁目2番3号 富士ビル323号 協和特許法律事務所 Kyowa Patent & Law Office, Room 323, Fuji Bld., 2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-0005 Japan
IV-3-2en	Address:	
IV-3-3	電話番号	03-3211-2321
IV-3-4	ファクシミリ番号	03-3211-1386
IV-3-5	電子メール	HCG03157@nifty.ne.jp

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本(出願用) - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22.02.1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

118545-506

V	国別指定	
V-1	広域特許 (他の種類の保護又は取扱いを 求める場合には括弧内に記載す る。)	<p>AP: GH GM KE LS MW SD SZ UG ZW 及びハラレプロトコルと特許協力条約の締約国で ある他の国</p> <p>EA: AM AZ BY KG KZ MD RU TJ TM 及びユーラシア特許条約と特許協力条約の締約国 である他の国</p> <p>EP: AT BE CH&LI CY DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LU MC NL PT SE 及びヨーロッパ特許条約と特許協力条約の締約国 である他の国</p> <p>OA: BF BJ CF CG CI CM GA GN GW ML MR NE SN TD TG 及びアフリカ知的所有権機構と特許協力条約の締 約国である他の国</p>
V-2	国内特許 (他の種類の保護又は取扱いを 求める場合には括弧内に記載す る。)	AL AM AT AU AZ BA BB BG BR BY CA CH&LI CN CU CZ DE DK EE ES FI GB GD GE GH GM HR HU ID IL IN IS JP KE KG KP KR KZ LC LK LR LS LT LU LV MD MG MK MN MW MX NO NZ PL PT RO RU SD SE SG SI SK SL TJ TM TR TT UA UG US UZ VN YU ZW
V-6	指定の確認の宣言 出願人は、上記の指定に加えて 、規則4.9(b)の規定に基づき、 特許協力条約のもとで認められる 他の全ての国の指定を行う。 ただし、V-6欄に示した国 の指定を除く。出願人は、これらの 追加される指定が確認を条件と していること、並びに 優先日から15月が経過する前 にその確認がなされない指定は 、この期間の経過時に、出願人 によって取り下げられたものと みなされることを宣言する。	
V-6	指定の確認から除外される国	なし (NONE)
VI-1	先の国内出願に基づく優先権 主張	
VI-1-1	先の出願日	1998年02月06日 (06.02.1998)
VI-1-2	先の出願番号	特願平10-26257
VI-1-3	国名	日本国 JP
VI-2	優先権証明書送付の請求 上記の先の出願のうち、右記の 番号のものについては、出願書 類の認証謄本を作成し国際事務 局へ送付することを、受理官庁 に対して請求している。	VI-1
VII-1	特定された国際調査機関(ISA)	日本国特許庁 (ISA/JP)

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本(出願用) - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22.02.1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

118545-506

VIII	照合欄	用紙の枚数	添付された電子データ
VIII-1	願書	9	-
VIII-2	明細書	80	-
VIII-3	請求の範囲	4	-
VIII-4	要約	1	p992012.txt
VIII-5	図面	0	-
VIII-7	合計	94	
VIII-8	添付書類	添付	添付された電子データ
VIII-9	手数料計算用紙	✓	-
VIII-16	PCT-EASYディスク	-	フレキシブルディスク
VIII-17	その他	優先権書類送付請求書	-
VIII-18	要約書とともに提示する図の番号		
VIII-19	国際出願の使用言語名:	日本語 (Japanese)	
IX-1	提出者の記名押印		
IX-1-1	氏名(姓名)	佐藤 一雄	
IX-2	提出者の記名押印		
IX-2-1	氏名(姓名)	小野寺 捷洋	
IX-3	提出者の記名押印		
IX-3-1	氏名(姓名)	堅田 健史	

受理官庁記入欄

T0-1	国際出願として提出された書類の実際の受理の日	
T0-2	図面 :	
10-2-1	受理された	
10-2-2	不足図面がある	
T0-3	国際出願として提出された書類を補完する書類又は図面であつてその後期間内に提出されたものの実際の受理の日(訂正日)	
T0-4	特許協力条約第11条(2)に基づく必要な補完の期間内の受理の日	
T0-5	出願人により特定された国際調査機関	ISA/JP
T0-6	調査手数料未払いにつき、国際調査機関に調査用写しを送付していない	

特許協力条約に基づく国際出願願書

原本（出願用） - 印刷日時 1999年02月22日 (22. 02. 1999) 月曜日 11時02分00秒

国際事務局記入欄

II-1	記録原本の受理の日	
------	-----------	--

[特許手続上の微生物の寄託の国際的承認
に関するブダペスト条約]

下記国際寄託当局によって規則7.1に従い
発行される。

原寄託についての受託証

氏名（名称） サントリー株式会社
寄託者 代表取締役 鳥井 信一郎
あて名 大阪府大阪市北区堂島浜2丁目1番40号

殿

BUDAPEST TREATY ON THE INTERNATIONAL RECOGNITION OF THE DEPOSIT OF MICROORGANISMS FOR THE PURPOSES OF PATENT PROCEDURE

RECEIPT IN THE CASE OF AN ORIGINAL DEPOSIT

issued pursuant to Rule 7.1 by the INTERNATIONAL DEPOSITORY AUTHORITY identified at the bottom of this page.

1. 微生物の表示

(寄託者が付した識別のための表示)

Streptomyces sp. SAM2084

(受託番号)

FERM BP- 6446

2. 科学的性質及び分類学上の位置

1 桶の微生物には、次の事項を記載した文書が添付されていた。

- 科学的性質
- 分類学上の位置

3. 受領及び受託

本国際寄託当局は、平成 6 年 2 月 17 日（原寄託日）に受領した 1 桶の微生物を受託する。

4. 移管請求の受領

本国際寄託当局は、平成 6 年 2 月 17 日（原寄託日）に 1 桶の微生物を受領した。
そして、平成 10 年 8 月 3 日に原寄託よりブダペスト条約に基づく寄託への移管請求を受領した。
(平成 6 年 2 月 17 日に寄託された微生物第 P- 14154 号より移管)

5. 国際寄託当局

通商産業省工業技術院生命工学工業技術研究所

名 称： National Institute of Bioscience and Human-Technology
Agency for Industrial Science and Technology

所 長 大曾 信一郎

Dr. Shigenori Ochiai Director-General

あて名： 日本国茨城県つくば市築1丁目1番6号（郵便番号305-8566）
1-3, Higashimikuchi 1-chome Tsukuba-shi Ibaraki-ken
305-8566, JAPAN

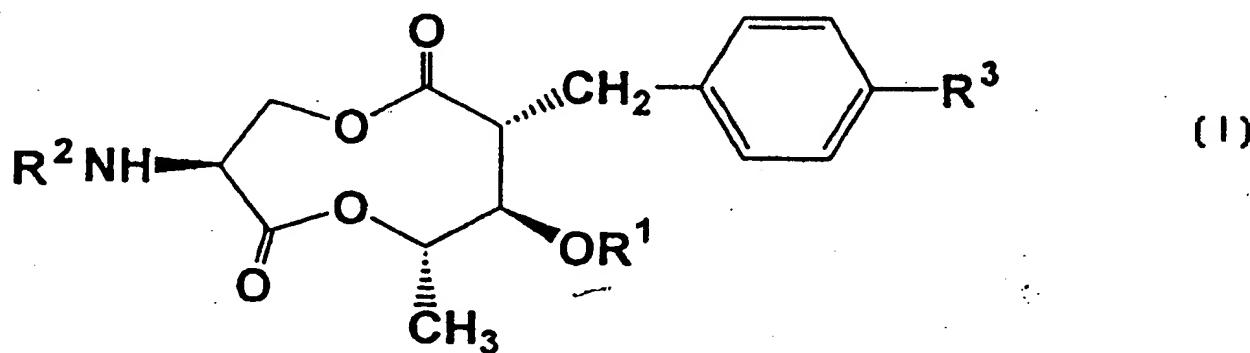
平成10年(1998) 8月 3日

特許協力条約に基づいて公開された国際出願

(51) 国際特許分類6 C07D 321/00, 405/12, A61K 31/335, 31/44, 31/505	A1	(11) 国際公開番号 WO99/40081 (43) 国際公開日 1999年8月12日(12.08.99)
(21) 国際出願番号 PCT/JP99/00541		
(22) 国際出願日 1999年2月8日(08.02.99)		
(30) 優先権データ 特願平10/26257 1998年2月6日(06.02.98)	JP	御子柴春樹(MIKOSHIBA, Haruki)[JP/JP] 〒222-8567 神奈川県横浜市港北区師岡町760番地 明治製薬株式会社 薬品総合研究所内 Kanagawa, (JP) 谷口 誠(TANIGUCHI, Makoto)[JP/JP] 〒596-0827 大阪府岸和田市上松町1201-3 Osaka, (JP) (74) 代理人 弁理士 佐藤一雄, 外(SATO, Kazuo et al.) 〒100-0005 東京都千代田区丸の内三丁目2番3号 富士ビル323号 協和特許法律事務所 Tokyo, (JP)
(71) 出願人 (米国を除くすべての指定国について) 明治製薬株式会社 (MEIJI SEIKA KAISHA, LTD.)[JP/JP] 〒104-8002 東京都中央区京橋二丁目4番16号 Tokyo, (JP)		(81) 指定国 AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, 欧州特許 (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI特許 (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG), ARIPO特許 (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), ユーラシア特許 (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM)
(72) 発明者 ; および (75) 発明者／出願人 (米国についてのみ) 阪中 治(SAKANAKA, Osamu)[JP/JP] 三友宏一(MITOMO, Koichi)[JP/JP] 田村隆由(TAMURA, Takayoshi)[JP/JP] 村井 安(MURAI, Yasushi)[JP/JP] 飯沼勝春(IINUMA, Katsuharu)[JP/JP] 〒250-0852 神奈川県小田原市栢山788番地 明治製薬株式会社 薬品技術研究所内 Kanagawa, (JP) 寺岡 豪(TERAOKA, Takeshi)[JP/JP] 葛原喜久子(KUZUHARA, Kikuko)[JP/JP]		添付公開書類 国際調査報告書 明細書とは別に規則13の2に基づいて提出された生物材料の 寄託に関する表示。

(54)Title: NOVEL ANTIFUNGAL COMPOUNDS AND PROCESS FOR PRODUCING THE SAME

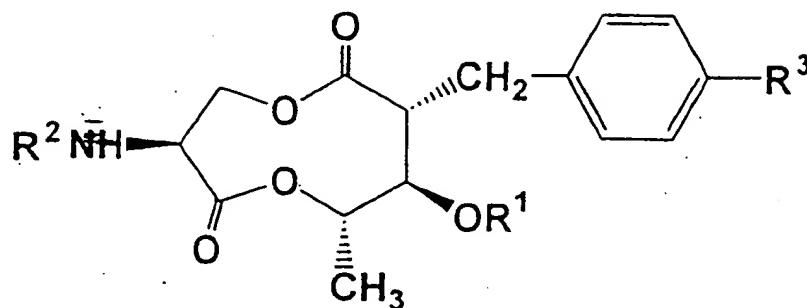
(54)発明の名称 新規抗真菌化合物とその製法



(57) Abstract

Compounds represented by general formula (I) which have potent antifungal activity without showing any chemical injury to man, beast or agricultural/horticultural plants to which the compounds are to be applied and show high photostability, wherein R¹ represents isobutyryl, tigloyl, isovaleryl or 2-methylbutanoyl; R² represents hydrogen, aromatic carboxylate or an amino-protective group; and R³ represents hydrogen, nitro, amino, acylamino or N,N-dialkylamino (provided that the case where R¹ is isobutyryl, tigloyl, isovaleryl or 2-methylbutanoyl and R³ is hydrogen, and then R² is 3-hydroxypicolinate, 3-hydroxy-4-methoxypicolinate or 3,4-dimethoxypicolinate is excluded).

下記の式(I)の化合物は、強力な抗真菌活性を有し、かつ、病害駆除の対象である人畜や農園芸植物に対して薬害を及ぼさず、さらに、光安定性の高い特質を有する。



(I)

[式中、R¹はイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、

R²は水素原子、芳香族カルボン酸残基、またはアミノ保護基を表し、

R³は水素原子、ニトロ基、アミノ基、アシルアミノ基、またはN, N-ジアルキルアミノ基を表す（但し、R¹がイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基であって、R³が水素原子であるとき、R²が3-ヒドロキシピコリン酸残基、3-ヒドロキシ-4-メトキシピコリン酸残基、または3, 4-ジメトキシピコリン酸残基である場合を除く）]

PCTに基づいて公開される国際出願のパンフレット第一頁に掲載されたPCT加盟国を同定するために使用されるコード(参考情報)

A E	アラブ首長国連邦	E S	スペイン	L I	リヒテンシュタイン	S G	シンガポール
A L	アルベニア	F I	フィンランド	L K	スリ・ランカ	S I	スロヴェニア
A M	アルメニア	F R	フランス	L R	リベリア	S K	スロヴァキア
A T	オーストリア	G A	ガボン	L S	レント	S L	シエラ・レオネ
A U	オーストラリア	G B	英國	L T	リトアニア	S N	セネガル
A Z	オゼルハイジャン	G D	グレナダ	L U	ルクセンブルグ	S Z	スワジランド
B A	ボズニア・ヘルツェゴビナ	G E	グルジア	L V	ラトヴィア	T D	チャード
B B	バルバドス	G H	ガーナ	M C	モナコ	T G	トーゴー
B E	ベルギー	G M	ガンビア	M D	モルドバ	T J	タジキスタン
B F	ブルガニア・ファズ	G N	ギニア	M G	マダガスカル	T M	トルクメニスタン
B G	ブルガリア	G W	ギニア・ビサオ	M K	マケドニア旧ユーゴスラヴィア	T R	トルコ
B J	ベナン	G R	ギリシャ	M L	共和国	T T	トリニダッド・トバゴ
B R	ブラジル	H R	クロアチア	M N	マリ	U A	ウクライナ
B Y	ベラルーシ	H U	ハンガリー	M R	モンゴル	U G	ウガンダ
C A	カナダ	I D	インドネシア	M W	モーリタニア	U S	米国
C F	中央アフリカ	I E	アイルランド	M X	マラウイ	U Z	ウズベキスタン
C G	コンゴー	I L	イスラエル	N E	メキシコ	V N	ヴィエトナム
C H	スイス	I N	インド	N L	ニジェール	Y U	ユーロースラビア
C I	コートジボアール	I S	アイスランド	N O	オランダ	Z A	南アフリカ共和国
C M	カメルーン	I T	イタリア	N Z	ノールウェー	Z W	シンガポール
C N	中国	J P	日本	P L	ニューデランド		
C U	キューバ	K E	ケニア	P T	ボラーランド		
C Y	キプロス	K G	キルギスタン	R O	ボルトガル		
C Z	チエコ	K P	北朝鮮	R U	ルーマニア		
D E	ドイツ	K R	韓国	S D	ロシア		
D K	デンマーク	K Z	カザフスタン				
E E	エストニア						

明細書

新規抗真菌化合物とその製法

〔発明の背景〕

発明の分野

本発明は抗真菌活性を有する新規な化合物またはその塩、その製造法、およびその用途に関するものである。

背景技術

真菌による種々の病気は、人間や動物の健康並びに農業に対し甚大な被害を与えており。このため、真菌に対して有用な化合物およびそれらの化合物を有効成分とする抗真菌剤を提供すること、およびこれらの化合物の有利な製造法を見出すことが常に求められている。

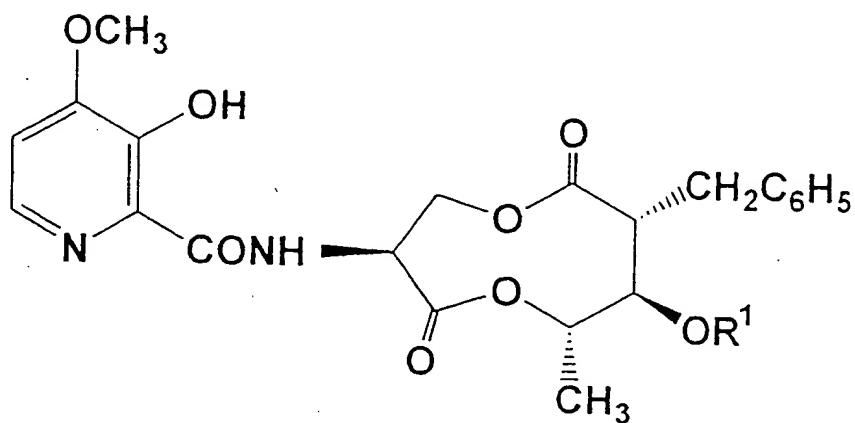
例えば、真菌のある種のものは、ヒトや動物に対して病原性を示し真菌感染症の起因とされている。真菌の病原性は概ね弱いものであるが、抵抗力の低下した状態の患者には重篤な症状を来すことがある。その為、その治療に有用な新規薬剤の開発が期待されている。また、真菌のある種のものは植物病原菌として知られており、植物病防御の面でも新たな農園芸用抗真菌剤の開発が待たれている。更に、最近の住宅事情を反映して、住宅への糸状菌の侵入が問題となっている。特に、糸状菌の進入は、ヒトにアレルギーなどの症状をもたらすことがあり、そのような症状の発生を未然に防止するための抗真菌剤、特に新規防カビ剤の開発が待たれている。

従来、これらの問題点を克服すべく種々の抗真菌剤が開発されており、一定の成果が得られている。

しかし、環境および人・動植物への安全性を備え、そして有効性の高い抗真菌

剤の開発が更に望まれている。そして農園芸植物用としては、高い抗真菌性を有するとともに光安定性の優れた抗真菌剤の開発が特に望まれている。

一方、特開平7-233165号には、下記の式(I I)で示される化合物の一部が開示されている。一般に式(I I)の化合物をUK-2と呼ぶ。



- | | |
|------|-----------------------------|
| UK2A | $R^1 = -COCH(CH_3)_2$ |
| UK2B | $R^1 = -COC(CH_3)=CHCH_3$ |
| UK2C | $R^1 = -COCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$ |
| UK2D | $R^1 = -COCH(CH_3)CH_2CH_3$ |

(I I)

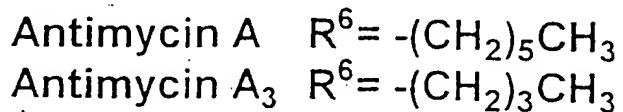
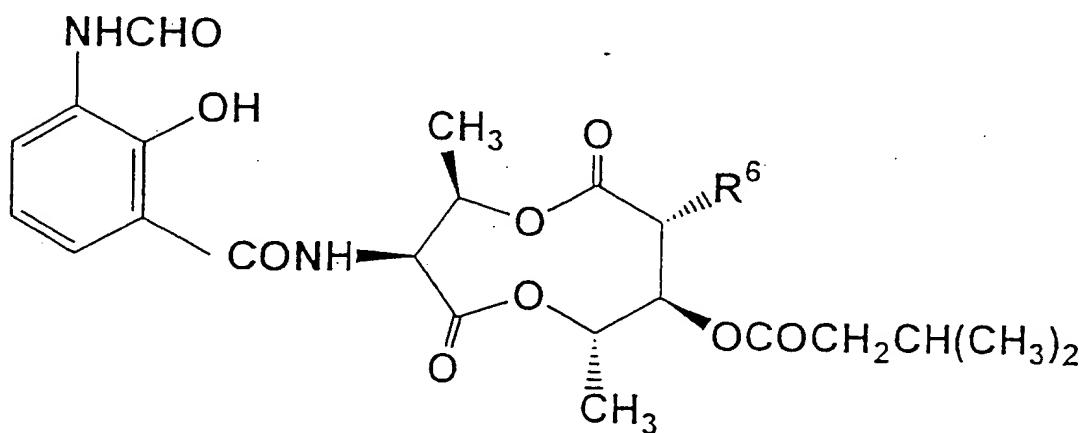
[式中、

R^1 が直鎖もしくは分岐鎖の飽和脂肪族炭化水素基または不飽和脂肪族炭化水素基を表す]

例えば、特開平7-233165号には、上記の式(I I)において、 R^1 がイソブチリル基である化合物（以下、UK-2Aと呼ぶ）、 R^1 がチグロイル基である化合物（以下、UK-2Bと呼ぶ）、 R^1 がイソバレリル基である化合物（以下、UK-2Cと呼ぶ）、 R^1 が2-メチルブタノイル基である化合物（以下、UK-2Dと呼ぶ）が、実施例化合物として開示されている。

上記公開公報においては、UK-2は真菌に対して抗真菌活性を有し、医療用抗真菌剤、農園芸用防カビ剤および工業用防カビ剤の有効成分として有用であることが記載されている。

特に、UK-2は、同じく9員環ジラクトン構造を有し、下記の式(III)で表される構造を有するアンチマイシン類に比較して、カンジダなどの酵母やアスペルギルス、ペニシリウム、ムコール、クラドスボリウム、リゾプス、スクレロチナ、トリコデルマなどの糸状菌を含む真菌に対して、同等以上の強い抗菌活性を有し、かつ、P388などの培養細胞に対する細胞障害性がアンチマイシン類に比較して遙かに低くその有用性が期待されている。



(III)

さらに、上記公開公報では、ストレプトバーティシリウムに属する微生物より発酵生産物としてUK-2を単離生成することが記載されている。

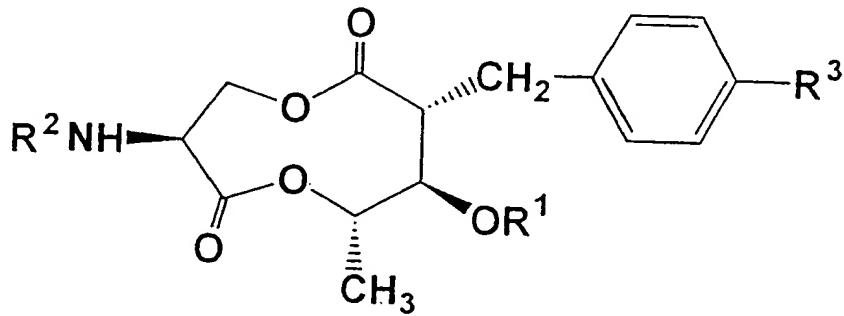
また、「Tetrahedron Letters 39(1998)4363-4366」には、UK-2の合成について開示されている。

[発明の概要]

本発明者は、今般、UK-2を出発物質とした新規化合物が、真菌由来の病害に対して強力な抗真菌活性を有し、かつ、病害駆除の対象である人畜や農園芸植物に対して薬害を及ぼさず、さらに、農園芸植物に用いた場合でも光安定性の高い特質を有するとの知見を得た。本発明は、かかる知見に基づくものである。

よって、本発明は、真菌由来の病害の予防駆除に有用な新規化合物、その製造法およびその新規化合物を用いた新規な抗真菌剤の提供をその目的としている。

そして、本発明による化合物は、下記の式(I)で表されるものである：



(I)

〔式中、

R^1 はイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、

R^2 は水素原子、芳香族カルボン酸残基、またはアミノ保護基を表し、

R^3 は水素原子、ニトロ基、アミノ基、アシルアミノ基、またはN, N-ジアルキルアミノ基を表す（但し、 R^1 がイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基であって、 R^3 が水素原子であるとき、 R^2 が3-ヒドロキシピコリン酸残基、3-ヒドロキシ-4-メトキシピコリン

酸残基、または3, 4-ジメトキシピコリン酸残基である場合を除く)]

[発明の具体的な説明]

微生物の寄託

式(I I)の化合物を産出する微生物である *Streptoverticillium* sp. SAM208菌株は、FERM BP-6446のもと、工業技術院生命工学技術研究所（日本国茨城県つくば市東1丁目1番3号）に寄託されている。この寄託の寄託者はサントリー株式会社（日本国大阪市北区堂島浜2丁目1番地40号）である。また、この寄託の原寄託は平成6年2月17日付け、受託番号FERM P-14154であり、ブタペスト条約に基づく寄託への移管請求の受領日は平成10年8月3日である。

定義

本明細書においては、基または基の一部としのアルキル基およびアルコキシ基は、直鎖状、分岐鎖状のいずれであってもよい。本明細書において、ハロゲンとは、フッ素、塩素、臭素またはヨウ素を意味するものとする。

式(1)の化合物

式(1)において、R¹はイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表す。

また、R²は、水素原子、芳香族カルボン酸残基、またはアミノ保護基を表す。

また、R³は、水素原子、ニトロ基、アミノ基、アシルアミノ基、またはN, N-ジアルキルアミノ基を表す。ただし、R¹がイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基であって、R³が水素原子であるとき、R²が3-ヒドロキシピコリン酸残基、3-ヒドロキシ-4-メトキシピコリン酸残基あるいは3, 4-ジメトキシピコリン酸残基である化合物は本発明の範囲より除かれる。

R²が表す芳香族カルボン酸残基とは、好ましくは芳香族複素環カルボン酸残基または安息香酸残基（即ちベンゾイル基）である。芳香族複素環カルボン酸残

基の具体例としては、ピコリン酸残基、ニコチン酸残基、4-キノリンカルボン酸残基、5-ピリミジンカルボン酸残基、2-キノキサリンカルボン酸残基が挙げられる。

これら芳香族カルボン酸残基の有する芳香環上の一以上の水素原子は置換されてもよい。置換基としては、例えば、水酸基、ハロゲン原子、ニトロ基、アミノ基、ジC₁₋₆アルキルアミノ基（好ましくは、ジメチルアミノ）、ホルミルアミノ基、C₁₋₆アルキル基（好ましくは、C₁₋₄アルキル基、より好ましくはメチルまたはエチル）、C₁₋₆アルコキシ基（好ましくは、C₁₋₄アルコキシ基、より好ましくは、メトキシまたはエトキシ）、ベンジルオキシ基、C₁₋₁₀脂肪族アシルオキシ基（脂肪族アシルオキシ基の持つアルキル基上の一以上の水素原子は置換されていてもよく、置換基としては、例えば、カルボキシル基、ベンジルオキシカルボニル基、C₁₋₄アルキルオキシカルボニル基、ベンジルオキシカルボニルアミノ基が挙げられる）、ベンゾイルオキシ基、C₁₋₄アルキルオキシカルボニルオキシ基、（C₁₋₄）アルキルオキシカルボニル（C₁₋₄）アルキルオキシ基、C₁₋₆アルキルスルホニルオキシ基、ジ（C₁₋₆）アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、ジフェニルホスホリルオキシ基が挙げられる。

芳香族カルボン酸残基の好ましい具体例としては、

- (1) ヒドロキシ安息香酸残基（好ましくは、2-ヒドロキシ安息香酸残基）、
- (2) ピコリン酸残基であって、

ヒドロキシ基、

C₁₋₆アルコキシ基（好ましくはC₁₋₄アルコキシ基、より好ましくはメトキシまたはエトキシである）、

ベンジルオキシ基、

C₁₋₆アルキルカルボニルオキシ基（好ましくはC₁₋₄アルキルカルボニル

オキシ基、より好ましくはアセチルオキシまたはプロピオニルオキシであり、またアルキル基部分はさらにベンジルオキシカルボニルアミノにより置換されてもよい)、

ベンジルオキシ基、

C_{1-6} アルコキシカルボニルオキシ基(好ましくは C_{1-4} アルコキシカルボニルオキシ基である)、

C_{1-6} アルキルオキシカルボニル C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基(好ましくは、 C_{1-4} アルキル(より好ましくはメチルまたはエチル)オキシカルボニル C_{1-10} アルキル(好ましくは C_{1-8} アルキル、より好ましくは C_{1-6} アルキル)カルボニルオキシ基)、

ベンジルオキシカルボニル C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、

カルボキシ C_{1-10} アルキル(好ましくは C_{1-6} アルキル)カルボニルオキシ基、

C_{1-6} アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、

ジ(C_{1-6})アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、および

ジフェニルホスホリルオキシ基、

からなる群から選択される一または二以上の置換基で置換されたピコリン酸残基、

(3) ヒドロキシ基で置換されたニコチン酸残基(好ましくは2-ヒドロキニコチン酸残基)、

(4) キノリンカルボン酸残基(好ましくは4-キノリンカルボン酸残基)であって、

ヒドロキシ基および

C_{1-6} アルキル基(好ましくは C_{1-4} アルキル、より好ましくはメチルまたはエチルである)

からなる群から選択される一または二以上の置換基で置換されたキノリンカルボ

ン酸残基、

(5) ヒドロキシ基で置換されたピリミジンカルボン酸残基（好ましくは4-ヒドロキシ-5-ピリミジンカルボン酸残基）、および

(6) ヒドロキシ基で置換されたキノキサリンカルボン酸残基（好ましくは3-ヒドロキシ-2-キノキサリンカルボン酸残基）

が挙げられる。

本発明の好ましい態様によれば、(1) ヒドロキシ安息香酸残基は、さらに一または二以上の置換基で置換されていてもよく、置換基の例としては、ニトロ基、アミノ基、ジC₁₋₆アルキルアミノ（好ましくはジC₁₋₄アルキルアミノ、より好ましくはメチルまたはエチルである）、ホルミルアミノ基、ハロゲン原子、およびC₁₋₆アルコキシ基（好ましくはC₁₋₄アルコキシ基、より好ましくはメトキシまたはエトキシである）が挙げられる。

さらに、本発明の好ましい態様によれば、(2) ピコリン酸残基のより好ましい例としてはC₁₋₆アルコキシ基（最も好ましくはメトキシ基）で置換されたものが挙げられ、さらに好ましい例としてはC₁₋₆アルコキシ基で置換され、さらにヒドロキシ基、C₁₋₆アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンゾイルオキシ基、C₁₋₆アルコキシカルボニルオキシ基、C₁₋₆アルキルオキシカルボニルC₁₋₁₀アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンジルオキシカルボニルC₁₋₁₀アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、カルボキシC₁₋₁₀アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ジ(C₁₋₆)アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、またはジブエニルホスホリルオキシ基で置換されたものが挙げられる。とりわけ、その4位にC₁₋₆アルコキシ基を有し、さらに上記他の置換基をその3位に有するピコリン酸残基が挙げられる。

R²が表すアミノ保護基は、通常のアミノ保護基のうち、還元条件または酸処理により除去脱離が可能な保護基をいう。好ましいアミノ保護基は、例えば、ベンジルオキシカルボニル基、p-ニトロベンジルオキシカルボニル基、メトキシ

カルボニル基、*t*-ブチルオキシカルボニル基が挙げられる。更に好ましいアミノ保護基は、ベンジルオキシカルボニル基である。

R^3 が表すアシルアミノ基の持つアシルとは、例えばC₁₋₆飽和ならびに不飽和脂肪族アシル基(好ましくは、ホルミル基、アセチル基、プロピオニル基)、芳香族アシル基(好ましくは置換基を有してもよいベンゾイル基、例えばベンゾイル基、p-メトキシベンゾイル基、p-ニトロベンゾイル基)が挙げられ、特に好ましくは、ホルミル基が挙げられる。

R^3 が表すN, N-ジアルキルアミノ基の持つアルキルとは、例えばC₁₋₄アルキル基(好ましくは、メチル基、エチル基)が挙げられる。

本発明による式(I)の化合物のうち、好ましい化合物群は次のとおりである。

式(I)において、 R^1 が、イソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、 R^2 が水素原子、芳香族カルボン酸残基、またはアミノ保護基を表し、 R^3 が水素原子を表す化合物群が挙げられる。また、別の化合物群としては、式(I)において R^1 が、イソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、 R^2 が3位にヒドロキシ基および4位にメトキシ基を持つピコリニル基を表し、 R^3 がニトロ基、アミノ基、アシルアミノ基、またはN, N-ジアルキルアミノ基を表す化合物群が挙げられる。

さらに好ましい化合物群としては、式(I)において、 R^1 が、イソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、 R^2 が、3位にアシルオキシ基および4位にメトキシ基を持つピコリニル基、3位にアセトキシ基および4位にメトキシ基を持つピコリニル基、3位にジ(C₁₋₆)アルキルホスホリルオキシ基および4位にメトキシ基を持つピコリニル基、3位にジフェニルホスホリルオキシ基および4位にメトキシ基を持つピコリニル基を表し、 R^3 が水素原子を表す化合物、 R^1 がイソブチリル基、チグロ

イル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、R²が3位にヒドロキシ基および4位にメトキシ基を持つピコリニル基を表し、R³がホルミルアミノ基、またはN, N-ジメチルアミノ基を表す化合物が挙げられる。

これらの好ましい化合物群は、3-ヒドロキシ-4-メトキシピコリニル残基の中の水酸基をアシリル基で保護することにより、UK-2の優れた抗真菌活性を有するとともに、化合物自体の光安定性を著しく改善することができた。

本発明の別の態様によれば、式(I)の化合物は、塩として存在することができる。

その塩としては、例えば薬学的に許容可能な塩があげられる。それらの塩の具体例としては、例えばリチウム塩、ナトリウム塩、カリウム塩、マグネシウム塩、カルシウム塩、並びにアンモニアおよび適切な無毒性アミンとの塩、例えばC₁₋₆アルキルアミン(例えばトリエチルアミン)塩、C₁₋₆アルカノールアミン(例えばジエタノールアミンまたはトリエタノールアミン)塩、プロカイン塩、シクロヘキシルアミン(例えばジシクロヘキシルアミン)塩、ベンジルアミン(例えばN-メチルベンジルアミン、N-エチルベンジルアミン、N-ベンジル-β-フェネチルアミン、N, N-ジベンジルエチレンジアミンまたはジベンジルアミン)塩および複素環アミン(例えばモルホリン、N-エチルピリジン)塩、またはフッ化水素酸、塩酸、臭化水素酸、ヨウ化水素酸等のハロゲン化水素酸塩、硫酸塩、硝酸塩、リン酸塩、過塩素酸塩、炭酸塩のような無機酸塩、酢酸、トリクロロ酢酸、トリフルオロ酢酸、ヒドロキシ酢酸、乳酸、クエン酸、酒石酸、シュウ酸、安息香酸、マンデル酸、酪酸、マレイン酸、プロピオン酸、蟻酸、リンゴ酸のようなカルボン酸塩、アルギニン酸、アスパラギン酸、グルタミン酸塩のようなアミノ酸塩、メタンスルホン酸、パラトルエンスルホン酸のような有機酸塩等、が挙げられる。

式(I)の化合物の製造

式(I)の化合物は、UK-2を出発物質として種々の化学反応を行うことによって製造することができる。従って、本発明の別の態様によれば、式(I)の化合物およびその塩の製造方法が提供される。

本発明者らは、前記した大きな特長を有するUK-2を出発物質として、更に有用性の高い新規誘導体の造出を目指して以下のような検討を重ねた結果、本発明を完成した。

UK-2は9員環ラクトン部分と置換ピリジン環部分がカルボン酸アミド結合を介して結合する形をとっている。本発明者らは、このカルボン酸アミド結合を化学的に切断して、アミノ基を有する9員環ラクトンを得ることに成功した。このアミノ化合物はUK-2誘導体を造出するうえでの重要中間体となり得るものである。更に本発明者らは、このアミノ化合物にUK-2とは異なる芳香族カルボン酸を縮合させ、抗真菌剤として有用な新規化合物を製造することに成功した。

カルボン酸アミド結合を化学的に切断する方法としては、酸やアルカリによる加水分解が一般的だが、この方法は高濃度の酸やアルカリとともに高い温度で長時間処理する必要があり、反応部位以外が酸やアルカリに安定である化合物にしか適用できない。UK-2は9員環ラクトン構造を含め、3つのカルボン酸エステル結合を持つため、このような加水分解条件によって容易にそれらの結合が分解を受けてしまう。

このように非常に感受性の高い官能基を有する化合物中のカルボン酸アミド結合を他の部分を損なわずに切断するための化学試薬として、トリメチルオキソニウムテトラフルオロボレート($(CH_3)_3OBF_4$)がよく利用される(Tetrahedron Letters, 1549, (1967))。

本発明者らも、先ずこの方法をUK-2に適用したが、反応はほとんど進行せず、若干の分解生成物を除いては、出発物質のUK-2を回収するに終わった。

一方、酸およびアルカリで非常に加水分解を受けやすい β -ラクタム環をもつペニシリン類やセファロスポリン類のそれぞれの6位および7位カルボン酸アミド結合を切断する方法としてイミノクロリドを経由するイミノエーテル化法が知られている。すなわち、先ず五塩化リンなどのクロル化剤で対応するイミノクロリドとし、次いでメタノールなどの低級アルコールと処理することによりイミノエーテルが生成、最後に水処理することによって、高収率でアシル基が切断された遊離アミノ体が得られる。

本発明者らは、このイミノエーテル化法をUK-2に適用したところ、下記に示すように、目的とするアミノ誘導体を得ることに成功した。このイミノエーテル化法を用いてUK-2からアミノ誘導体を得る方法は、UK-2、アンチマイシン類などにみられる化学的に非常に不安定な9員環ジラクトン構造を有する化合物での最初の成功例である。

本発明の好ましい態様によれば、式(I)の化合物は、下記の方法によって好ましくは製造することができる。

(1) 出発物質：

式(I)の化合物の出発物質としては、UK-2を用いることができる。UK-2は、ストレプトバーティシリウム (*Streptoverticillium*) に属する微生物から得ることができる。

ストレプトバーティシリウムに属する微生物は、土壤等の微生物分離源から常法に従って放線菌を分離し、次にこれらの菌株から前記の式(I I)の化合物を産出する菌株を選択することにより得ることができる。

式(I I)の化合物産出菌の一例としては、前記微生物寄託の欄で記載した、*Streptoverticillium* sp. SAM2084と命名された放線菌を挙げることができる。

微生物SAM2084の細菌の培養および培養液から式(I I)の化合物であるUK-2を単離精製する方法は、特開平7-233165号の記載に準じて実施すること

ができる。

(2) 9員環ラクトン部分と置換ピリジン環部分とのカルボン酸アミド結合の化学的切断：

本発明の一の態様によれば、UK-2のカルボン酸アミド結合の化学的切断によってUK-2アミノ誘導体を製造することができる。また式R¹が式中で定義された基であり、R²が水素原子またはアミノ保護基であり、およびR³が水素原子、ニトロ基またはN、N-ジアルキルアミノ基である式(I)の化合物を製造することができる。本発明の態様によれば、出発原料であるUK-2を不活性有機溶媒に溶解しクロル化剤を加えて加熱還流して反応を行う。クロル化剤の添加量は、1モル当量～10モル当量、好ましくは2モル当量～3モル当量である。反応時間は、1時間～5時間、好ましくは1～3時間である。反応温度は、0℃～80℃、好ましくは30℃～40℃である。

この反応によって対応するイミノクロル体が形成される。反応終了後、反応液を-30℃～-20℃まで冷却する。冷却した反応液に、出発物質であるUK-2の10倍量～100倍量の低級アルコール(0℃～5℃に冷却したもの)を加えて反応させる。反応時間は、1時間～15時間、好ましくは2時間～3時間であり、反応温度は、0℃～50℃、好ましくは15℃～25℃である。これにより対応するイミノエーテル体が形成される。イミノエーテル体は水との処理により容易に加水分解を受けて、目的のUK-2アミノ誘導体が生成される。この化学反応については、下記の化学反応式1に示す通りである。

使用するクロル化剤は五塩化リンが代表的である。

使用する低級アルコールは、直鎖状または分岐鎖状のアルコール、例えば、メタノール、エタノール、n-プロピルアルコール、イソプロピルアルコール、n-ブチルアルコール、イソブチルアルコールが挙げられる。

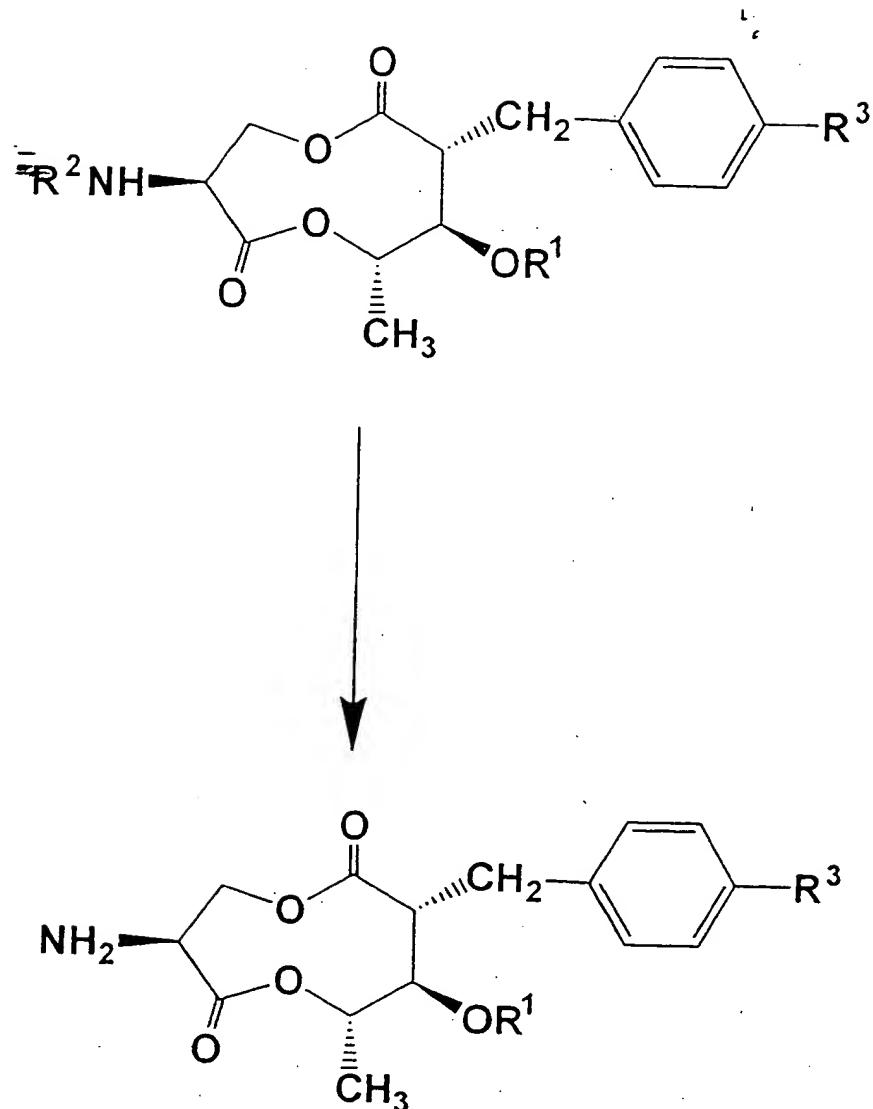
得られた9員環ジラクトン・UK-2アミノ誘導体は遊離アミノ基とジラクトン構

造が共存しており、分解を引き起こし易い。このため、この形で単離精製操作すること、および長期間保存することは問題である。

そこで、目的のUK-2アミノ誘導体の遊離アミノ基部分を塩、例えばp-トルエンスルホン酸塩~~と~~塩酸塩として、また導入かつ脱離の容易な保護基、例えばベンジルオキシカルボニル基、p-ニトロベンジルオキシカルボニル基、メトキシカルボニル基、t-ブチルオキシカルボニル基などで保護した形で精製単離して保存し、使用直前にまたは反応系内で遊離アミノ基に戻して、縮合反応に供することが望ましい。

本発明の別の態様によれば、後記の方法によって得られる式(I)において、R¹が式中で定義された基であり、R²が芳香族カルボン酸残基であり、R³がニトロ基またはN、N-ジアルキルアミノ基である化合物からも上記反応によって、対応するアミノ体およびそのアミノ保護体を得ることができる。

化学反应式1：



UK-2アミノ誘導体

(3)アシル化による式(I)の化合物の製造:

本発明の態様によれば、上記方法によって得られたUK-2アミノ誘導体は、任意の芳香族カルボン酸、芳香族カルボン酸クロリド、芳香族カルボン酸無水物、または芳香族カルボン酸活性エステル等と容易に反応する。

この反応によって、R¹が式中で定義された基であり、R²が芳香族カルボン酸残基であり、R³が水素原子である式(I)の化合物を製造することができる。

例えば、UK-2アミノ誘導体と芳香族カルボン酸とを不活性溶媒中、脱水縮合試薬によって処理しエステル縮合反応を行うことで、対応する芳香族カルボン酸残基を有する式(I)の化合物を製造することができる。

脱水縮合試薬としては、例えば、ジシクロヘキシリカルボジイミド、1-エチル-3-(3-ジメチルアミノプロピル)カルボジイミド塩酸塩、ジシクロヘキシリカルボジイミドと1-ヒドロキシベンゾトリアゾールとの併用、等が挙げられる。

また、芳香族カルボン酸の反応性を予め活性化させた、芳香族カルボン酸クロリド、芳香族カルボン酸無水物、芳香族カルボン酸活性エステルを用いる場合は、芳香族カルボン酸を塩化チオニルや五塩化リン等で処理した酸クロリド、クロル炭酸エステルやオキシ塩化リンなどとの酸無水物、N-ヒドロキシコハク酸イミドや2-メルカプトベンズチアゾールとの縮合によって、活性エステルなどにして用いる、手法が適用できる。

このような芳香族カルボン酸活性化体を不活性溶媒中、中性または弱塩基性条件下でUK-2アミノ誘導体と反応させて、容易に目的の芳香族カルボン酸アミドである式(I)の化合物を製造することができる。

本発明の別の態様によれば、R¹が式中で定義された基であり、R²が水素原子であり、R³がニトロ基、アシルアミノ基またはN,N-ジアルキルアミノ基である式(I)の化合物からも同様にして対応する芳香族カルボン酸アミド体が得

られる。

これらのカルボン酸アミド類は強い抗真菌活性を示し、また各種植物病に対して、薬害なく優れた予防あるいは治療効果を有することが実証された。特にアミド基が結合する炭素原子に隣接する炭素原子に水酸基を持ち、かつ1つ以上の窒素原子を環構成原子とする複素環カルボン酸誘導体、無置換または3位、5位が含窒素基（ニトロ基、ホルミルアミノ基、N、N-ジメチルアミノ基など）、クロルなどで置換されたサリチル酸誘導体が特に高い活性を示した。

(4) R²の表す芳香族カルボン酸残基の有する水酸基のアシル化：

本発明の一の態様によれば、R¹およびR³が式中で定義されたそれぞれの基であり、R²が置換基としてアシルオキシ基を持つ芳香族カルボン酸残基である式(I)の化合物は、以下の方法によって製造することができる。

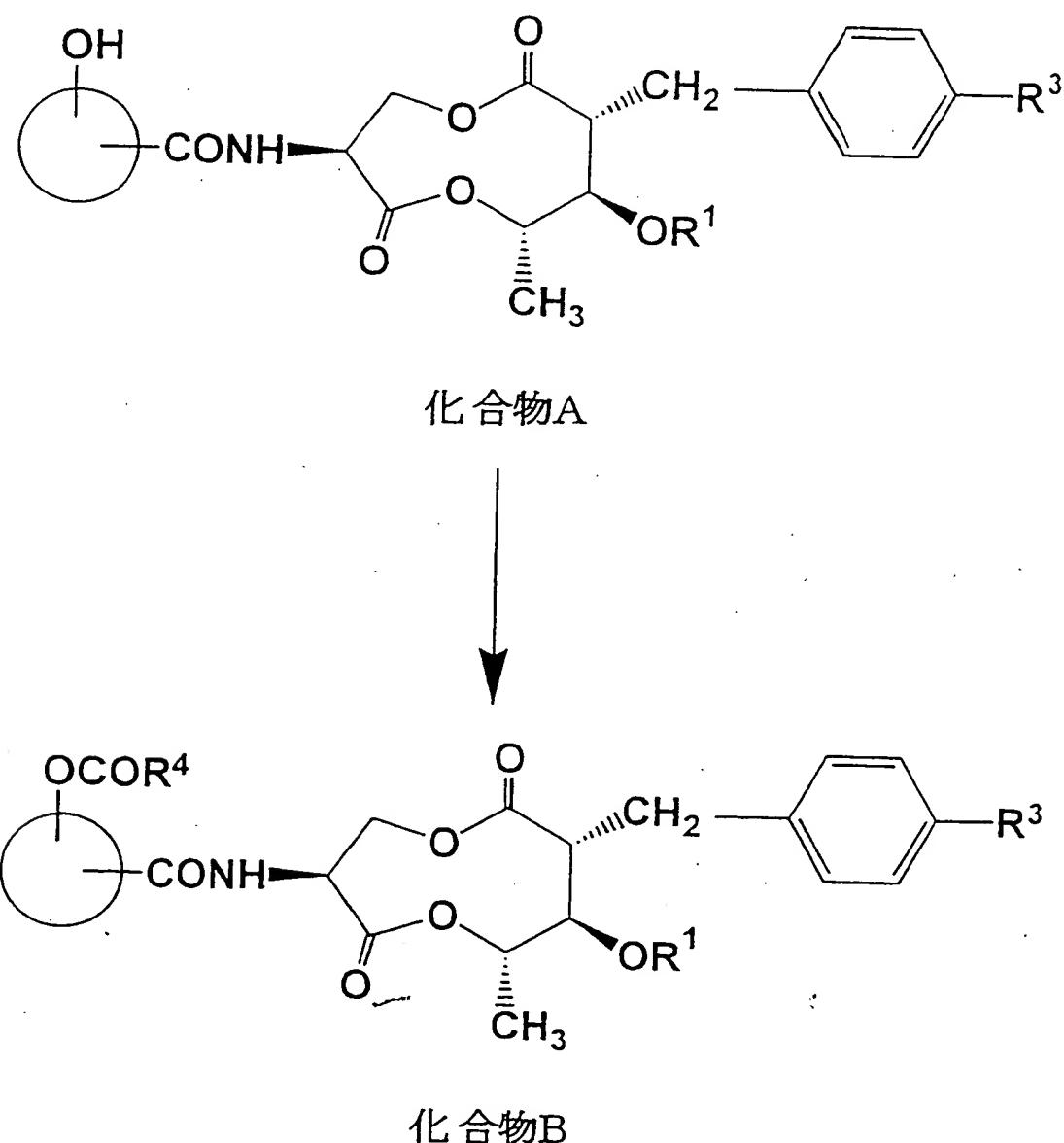
UK-2または、R¹およびR³が式中で定義されたそれぞれの基であり、R²が置換基として水酸基を持つ芳香族カルボン酸残基である式(I)の化合物(化合物A)を出発物質として用いる。これら出発物質に対して水酸基のアシル化を行う。このアシル化によって、R²の表す芳香族カルボン酸残基の水酸基がアシル化された対応する式(I)の化合物(化合物B；-COR⁴はC₁₋₆飽和ならびに不飽和脂肪族アシル基または芳香族アシル基を表す)がほぼ定量的収率で得られる。

この化学反応については、下記の化学反応式2に示す通りである。

本発明において用いられるアシル化法は、水酸基のアシル化法のほとんどを適用することができる。例えば、塩化マチレン、クロロホルム、1,4-ジオキサン、テトラヒドロフラン等の不活性溶媒中または無溶媒で安息香酸、C₁₋₆飽和または不飽和脂肪族カルボン酸、芳香族カルボン酸等の酸無水物(例えば無水酢酸、無水プロピオン酸、無水安息香酸等)とピリジン、トリエチルアミン等の第3級有機塩基との組み合わせ、あるいは対応酸塩化物(例えば塩化アセチル、塩化プロピオニル、塩化ピバロイル、塩化ベンゾイル等)と上記第3級有機塩基と

の組み合わせ、あるいはまた対応遊離カルボン酸類やアミノ基を保護したアミノ酸などとジシクロヘキシリカルボジイミドなどの脱水縮合剤との組み合わせなどが有用である。

化学反応式 2 :



本発明の別の態様によれば、前記化合物Aに対して、コハク酸ジクロリド、ピメリン酸ジクロリドなどに代表されるジカルボン酸ジクロリド($\text{C}_1\text{CO}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{COCl}$ 、 $n=2$ 以上の整数)と反応させることができる。

三

この場合、化合物Aに対して、1モル当量あるいは若干過剰のクロリドを反応させるとモノクロリド体(化合物C)が効率よく生成することができる。

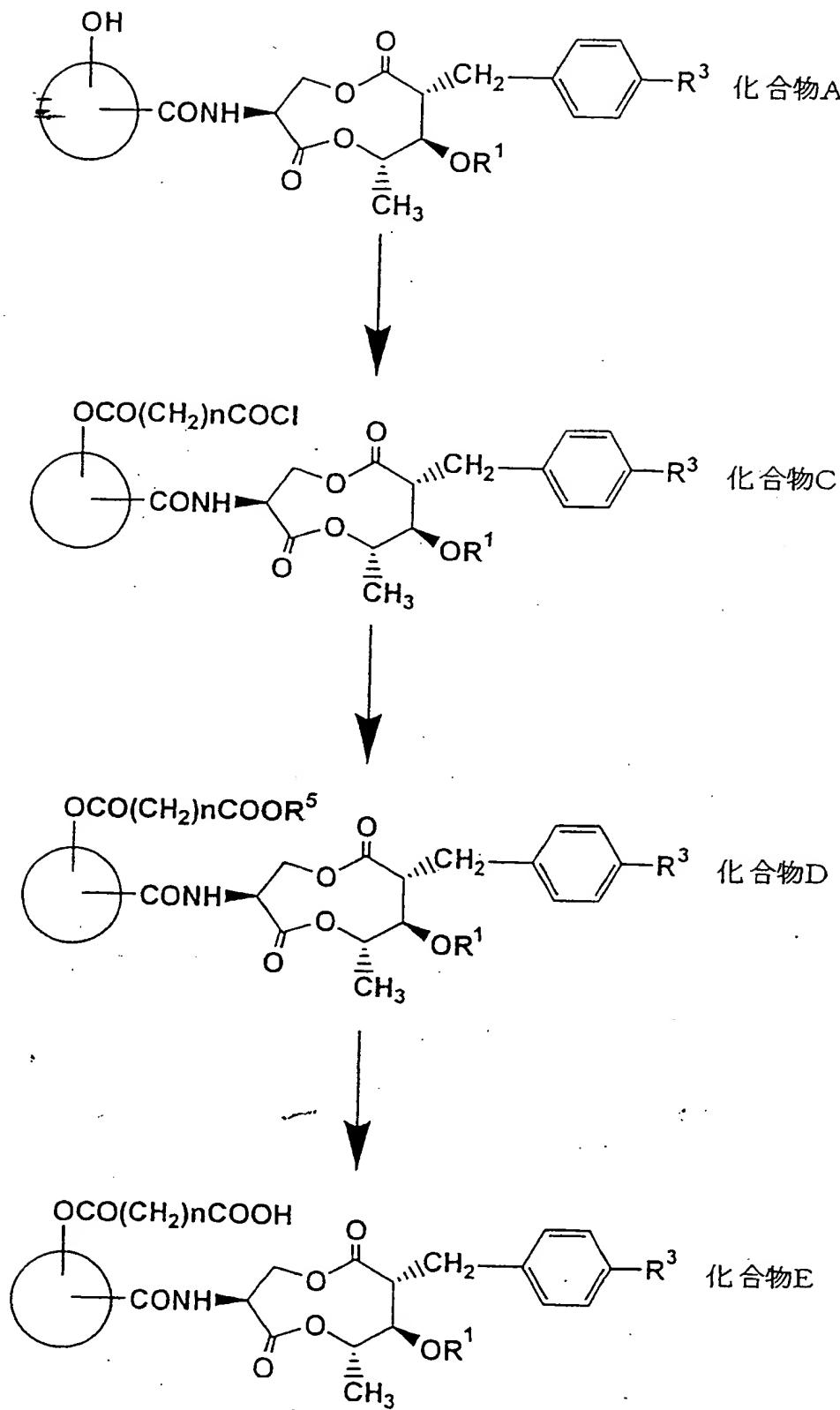
得られた化合物Cを単離精製することなく、引き続き適切な塩基存在下、アルコール類(R^5OH ; R^5 は、置換あるいは無置換ベンジル基または C_{1-4} アルキル基を表す)を反応させると、対応するエステル体(化合物D)を生成することができる。

使用するアルコール類は、例えば、メタノール、エタノール、ベンジルアルコールなどの第1級アルコールの他、イソプロパノールなどの第2級アルコール、t-ブチルアルコールなどの第3級アルコール等が挙げられる。

得られた化合物Dは、それぞれのエステルの性格に応じた脱エステル化反応によって遊離カルボン酸タイプの化合物Eを生成することができる。

特に化合物Dがベンジルエステル体($\text{R}^5=\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$)、p-ニトロベンジルエステル($\text{R}^5=\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{p-NO}_2$)の場合、通常の接触水素添加反応によって、分子内の官能性部分を損なうことなく容易に脱エステル化させることができるので、カルボキシル基を有する化合物Eを生成することができるので好ましい。この化学反応については、下記の化学反応式3に示す通りである。

化学反应式 3 :



本発明による上記反応により得られたアシル体（化合物B、化合物D、化合物E）は、UK-2の高い抗真菌活性を維持するとともに、アシル化によって化合物の光安定性が向上したものである。このことから、野外農場等に使用される農薬としては好ましい特性を有するものである。

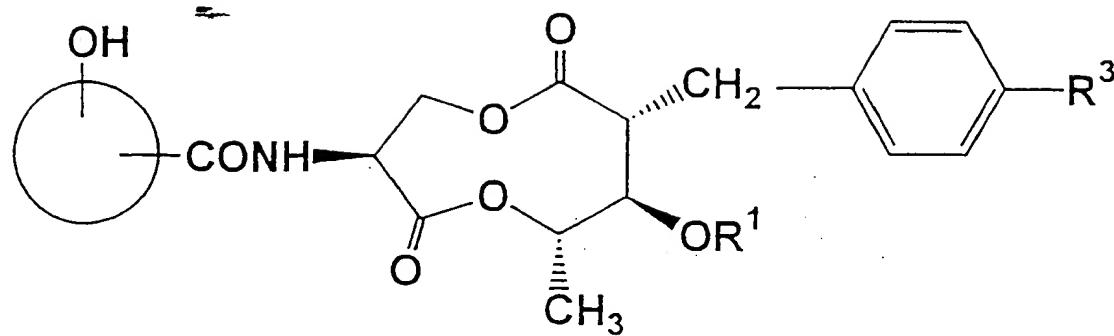
(5) R²の表す芳香族カルボン酸残基の有する水酸基のリン酸エステル化：

本発明の一の態様では、R¹およびR³が式中で定義されたそれぞれの基であり、R²が置換基としてホスホリルオキシ基を持つ芳香族カルボン酸残基である式(I)の化合物（化合物F；R⁶はC₁₋₆アルキル基またはフェニル基を表す）は以下の方法によっても製造できる。

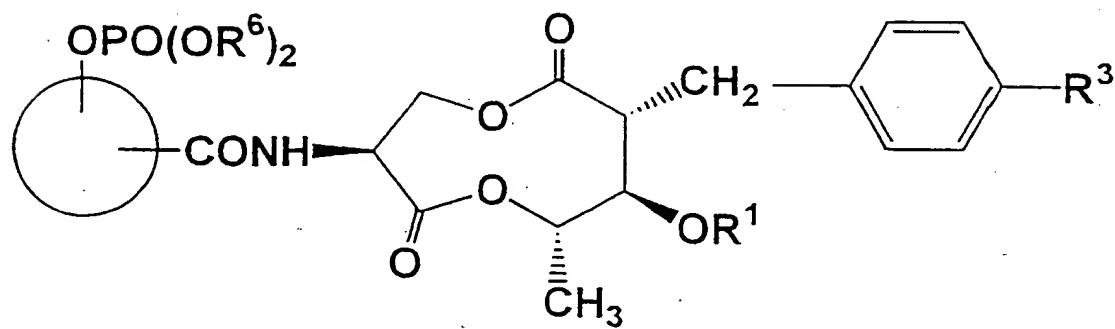
本発明の好ましい態様では、UK-2または、R¹およびR³が式中で定義されたそれぞれの基であり、R²が置換基として水酸基を持つ芳香族カルボン酸残基である式(I)の化合物（化合物A）に対して、水酸基のリン酸エステル化を行う。このリン酸エステル化反応によって、R²の表す芳香族カルボン酸残基の有する水酸基がリン酸エステル化された対応する式(I)の化合物（化合物F）が好収率で得られる。この化学反応については、下記の化学反応式4に示す通りである。

本発明において用いるリン酸エステル化の方法としては、既知のリン酸エステル化のほとんどを適用することができる。例えば、塩化メチレン、クロロホルム、1, 4-ジオキサン、テトラヒドロフラン等の不活性溶媒中でピリジン、トリエチルアミン等の第3級有機塩基存在下、リン酸ジエステルモノクロリド（ジフェニルリン酸クロリド、ジエチルリン酸クロリド等）を用いて反応させることで行うことができる。本発明においては、反応促進剤としてジメチルアミノピリジンを加えることができる。

化学反応式 4



化合物A



化合物F

(6) ベンジル基のベンゼン環の化学修飾：

本発明の一の態様によれば、R¹が式中で定義された基であり、R²が芳香族カルボン酸残基であり、R³がニトロ基、アミノ基、アシルアミノ基、またはN,N-ジアルキルアミノ基である式(I)の化合物は下記の化学反応(修飾)によって製造することができる。

本発明の好ましい態様によれば、上記の(2)または(3)の製造法で得られる化合物(例えば化合物A)のうちR³が水素原子である化合物(化合物G)を出発物質として用いる。化合物Gのベンジル基のベンゼン環に対して芳香環上の求電子ニトロ置換反応を行う。このニトロ置換反応によって、分解を起こすことなく、化合物Gのベンゼン環(パラ位)に選択的にニトロ基の導入された化合物H(式(I)において、R¹が式中で定義された基であり、R²が芳香族カルボン酸残基であり、R³がニトロ基である化合物)を高収率で製造することができる。

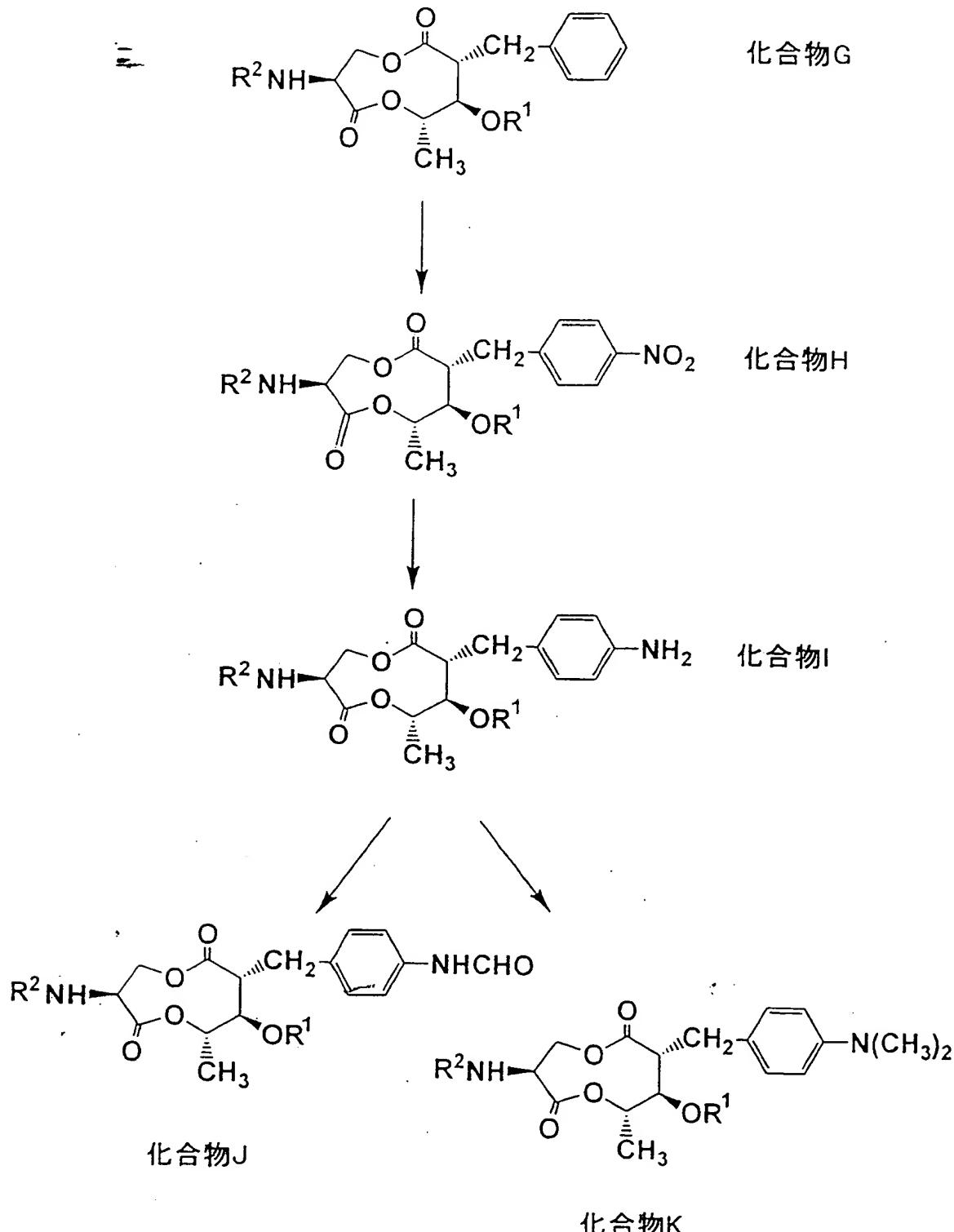
本発明において用いられるニトロ化反応は、通常汎用されている反応を用いることができる。本発明においては、低温化(-20°C~-50°C)した塩化メチレンやクロロホルム溶媒中において、強力ニトロ化剤である発煙硝酸を用いて行なうことが好ましい。ニトロ化反応時間は、1時間~2時間で行なうのが好ましい。

本発明の別の態様によれば、得られた化合物Hに対しては、通常の芳香族ニトロ化合物に対して行なうことができる化学変換を適用することができる。例えば、化合物Hを公知の手段で還元することによってアミノ化合物(化合物I)を製造することができる。

得られた化合物Iに対しては、公知のN-アシル化(ホルミル化やアセチル化など)反応やN-アルキル化(N,N-ジメチル化やN,N-ジエチル化など)反応を行うことができる。これらの反応によって、式(I)において、R¹が式中で定義された基であり、R²が芳香族カルボン酸残基であって、R³がアミノ基(化合物I)、アシルアミノ基(ホルミル化の場合には、化合物J)またはN,

N-ジアルキルアミノ基（ジメチル化の場合、化合物K）である化合物が得られる。これらの化学反応については、下記の化学反応式5に示す通りである。

化学反応式5：



式（I）の化合物の用途／医薬組成物

本発明の一の態様では、前記の式（I）で表される化合物が、真菌由来の病害に対して強力な抗真菌活性を有し、かつ、病害の予防駆除の対象である人畜や農園芸植物に対し薬害を及ぼさない特質を有することに基礎を置くものである。

即ち、前記の式（I）で表される化合物は、UK-2を出発物質とし後述する化学反応を経ることによって、真菌に対して強い抗真菌活性を有し、抗真菌剤として、特に医療用抗真菌剤、農園芸用防カビ剤および工業用防カビ剤の有効成分としての性質を有するものである。

本発明による式（I）の化合物は、強い抗真菌活性や各種植物病に侵れた予防あるいは治療効果を有する。従って、式（I）の化合物は、本化合物に感受性を有する真菌が原因である真菌感染症治療用の抗真菌剤をはじめ、農園芸用抗真菌剤または工業用抗真菌剤の有効成分として有用である。

本発明による式（I）の化合物を有効成分とする抗真菌剤は、経口および非経口（例えば、皮下投与、静注、筋注、直腸投与、経皮投与）のいずれかの投与経路で、ヒトおよびヒト以外の動物に投与することができる。

本発明による式（I）の化合物を有効成分とする真菌感染症治療用の抗真菌剤は、投与経路に応じた適切な剤形として提供されることが好ましい。

例えば、主として静注、筋注等の注射剤、カプセル剤、錠剤、顆粒剤、散剤、丸剤、細粒剤、トローチ錠等の経口剤、軟膏剤、ローション剤、腫瘍薬等の局所投与剤、直腸投与剤、油脂性座剤、水性座剤等の種々に調製することが好ましい。

抗真菌剤として効果をより確実なものとするために、例えば、賦形剤、增量剤、結合剤、湿潤化剤、崩壊剤、表面活性剤、滑沢剤、分散剤、緩衝剤、保存剤、溶解補助剤、矯味矯臭剤、無痛化剤、安定化剤等、の薬学上許容されるものを適宜選択し、組み合わせることによって製造することが望ましい。

使用可能な無毒性の上記添加剤は、例えば乳糖、果糖、ブドウ糖、でん粉、ゼ

ラチン、炭酸マグネシウム、合成ケイ酸マグネシウム、タルク、ステアリン酸マグネシウム、メチルセルロース、カルボキシメチルセルロースまたはその塩、アラビアゴム、ポリエチレングリコール、シロップワセリン、グリセリン、エタノール、プロピレングリコール、クエン酸、塩化ナトリウム、亜硫酸ソーダ、リン酸ナトリウム等が挙げられる。

本発明による式(I)の化合物を含んでなる抗真菌剤の投与量は、症状や年齢、性別等を考慮し、個々の場合に応じて適宜決定することが好ましい。

従って、本発明による式(I)の化合物を含んでなる、治療薬または予防薬、とりわけ避妊薬または乳癌もしくは卵巣癌の治療薬は、静脈投与する場合、通常成人1日当たり約0.01～1000mg、好ましくは0.1～100mgで投与するのが望ましい。筋肉投与の場合には、通常成人1日当たり約0.01～1000mg、好ましくは0.1～100mg、で投与するのが望ましい。経口投与の場合には、通常成人1日当たり約0.5～2000mg、好ましくは1～1000mg、で投与するのが望ましい。これらの投与の何れの場合であっても、一日1回または数回に別けて投与することが望ましい。

本発明による式(I)の化合物を含んでなる農園芸用抗真菌剤は、種々の投与形態に合わせて、担体を用い、さらに必要に応じて適切な添加剤を配合して、適切な剤形とされて提供されることが好ましい。例えば粉剤、粒剤、顆粒剤などの固体剤、溶液、油剤、乳剤、水和剤、懸濁剤、エアゾール剤などの液剤に製剤し、液剤は適宜希釈する等して使用するのが好ましい。

好ましく用いられる担体としては、クレー、タルク、珪藻土、白土、炭酸カルシウム、無水珪酸、ベントナイト、硫酸ナトリウム、シリカゲル、有機酸塩類、糖類、澱粉、樹脂類、合成若しくは天然高分子等の固体粉末あるいは粒状担体、キシレン等の芳香族炭化水素原子類、ケロシン等の脂肪族炭化水素原子類、メチルエチルケトン、シクロヘキサン、イソホロン等のケトン類、ラクタム類、ア

ニソール等のエーテル類、エタノール、プロパノール、エチレングリコール等のアルコール類、酢酸エチル、酢酸ブチル等のエステル類、ジメチルスルホキシド、ジメチルホルムアミド、水等の液体担体が挙げられる。

更に、製剤の効果をより確実にするために、乳化剤、分散剤、潤滑剤、結合剤、滑沢剤等の添加剤を目的に応じて適宜選択し、組み合わせるなどして用いることが望ましい。

そのような添加剤は、例えば非イオン性、イオン性の界面活性剤、カルボキシメチルセルロース、ポリ酢酸ビニル、ポリビニルアルコール、ガム類、ステアリン酸塩類、ワックス、糊料等が挙げられる。

本発明の農園芸用抗真菌剤においては、式(I)の化合物を、通常、粉剤の場合には0.01~10重量%程度、好ましくは0.1~5重量%程度、水和剤の場合には1~90重量%程度、好ましくは5~75重量%程度、粒剤の場合には0.01~40重量%程度、好ましくは0.1~20重量%程度、液剤の場合には1~60重量%程度、好ましくは5~40重量%程度、懸濁剤の場合には1~80重量%程度、好ましくは5~50重量%程度含有させる。

本発明の農園芸用抗真菌剤を使用するに当たっては、単独で使用できることはもちろんあるが、殺菌剤、殺虫剤、除草剤、植物成長調節剤などの農薬、あるいは肥料、土壤改良剤などと併用して、若しくは混合剤として使用することもできる。

本発明による農園芸用抗真菌剤の適用量は、製剤の形態および施用する方法、目的、時期を考慮して適宜決定されるのが望ましい。具体的な適用量は、通常、有効成分である式(I)の化合物の量に換算して、イネいもち病防除の場合1ha当たり10~2000gの範囲で適用されるのが好ましく、より好ましくは50~1000gの範囲である。

本発明の農園芸用抗真菌剤は、農園芸植物のみならず、その成育環境(例えば、

囲場) や農園芸用機器にも施すことができる。

本発明の式 (I) の化合物を工業用抗真菌剤として使用するには、種々の使用形態に合わせて、本発明の化合物を公知の担体および必要に応じて公知の補助剤と組み合わせて製剤化すればよい。このような工業用抗真菌剤は、一般産業用製品およびこれらの製品の製造工程中で問題となる有害真菌の繁殖を防御し、有害真菌の汚染を防止するために使用されるものである。具体的には木材の表面汚染を防止する防黴剤、木材製品の腐朽菌対策剤、塗料に添加する防腐・防黴剤、壁装剤、高分子加工時に添加する防黴剤、皮革、繊維および織物の加工に用いる防黴剤などを例示することができる。

[実施例]

例1

(1) (2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-Amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione : および (2) その p-トルエンスルホン酸塩 :

UK-2A 500 mg を塩化メチレン 50 mL に溶解し、氷冷下ピリジン 0.15 mL と五塩化リン 395 mg を加えて 1.5 時間加熱還流した。-30 °C に冷却した後、あらかじめ 0 °C に冷却したメタノール 50 mL を加えて 15 時間反応した。あらかじめ 0 °C に冷却した塩化メチレン 200 mL と飽和重曹水 150 mL を加えて分液し、更に水層をジクロロメタン 20 mL で 2 回抽出して、合併した有機層を硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣を酢酸エチル 50 mL に溶かし、p-トルエンスルホン酸 1 水和物 180 mg の酢酸エチル (50 mL) 溶液を室温にて加えた。析出してきた p-トルエンスルホン酸塩 (2) を濾取した。収量は 232 mg であった (収率 45 %)。

この塩 87 mg を塩化メチレンと 5% 重曹水との混液に溶解し、分液して有機層を硫酸ナトリウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮し、標題化合物 (1) 51 mg (収率 86 %) を得た。

標題化合物(1)

¹H-NMR (CD₃OD) : δ = 1. 22 (6H, d, J = 7. 0, CH (CH₃)₂), 1. 32 (3H, d, J = 6. 1, 4-CH₃), 2. 60 (1H, septet, J = 7. 0, CH (CH₃)₂), 2. 76 (1H, dd, J = 13. 4, 4. 3, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 81 (1H, dd, J = 13. 4, 9. 5, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 02 (1H, t d, J = 4. 3, 9. 5, H-2), 3. 82 (1H, bs, H-8), 4. 41, 4. 51 (each 1H, each bs, NH₂), 4. 70~5. 30 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7. 11~7. 23 (5H, m, C₆H₅)

MS (EI) : m/z = 363 (M)

p-トルエンスルホン酸塩(2)

¹H-NMR ((CD₃)₂SO) : δ = 1. 17 (6H, d, J = 7. 0, CH (CH₃)₂), 1. 32 (3H, d, J = 5. 86, 4-CH₃), 2. 30 (3H, s, CH₃C₆H₄SO₃H), 2. 60~2. 80 (3H, m, J = 7. 0, CH (CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 00~3. 20 (1H, m, H-2), 3. 50 (1H, bs, H-8), 4. 52 (1H, dd, J = 5. 5, 8. 4, H-8), 4. 90~5. 20 (3H, m, H-3, 4, 7), 7. 11 (2H, d, J = 7. 6, CH₃C₆H₄SO₃H), 7. 14~7. 30 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 7. 48 (2H, d, J = 8. 1, CH₃C₆H₄SO₃H)

例2

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-Amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione tosylate :

メタノールをイソブタノールに代えた以外は例1と同様の方法にて標題化合物(収率41%)を得た。

例3

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-Benzylloxycarbonylamino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

UK-2A 100 mg を塩化メチレン 10 mL に溶解し、氷冷下ピリジン 32 mg と五塩化リン 83 mg を加えて、1. 5 時間加熱還流した。次いで -30 °C に冷却した後、あらかじめ 0 °C に冷却したメタノール 10 mL を加えて室温で 3 時間反応した。反応液にあらかじめ 0 °C に冷却した塩化メチレン 50 mL と飽和重曹水 50 mL を加えて分液し、更に水層を塩化メチレン 20 mL で 2 回抽出して、合併した有機層を硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣を塩化メチレン 5 mL に溶解し、氷冷下ピリジン 46 μl と塩化ベンジルオキシカルボニル 84 μl を加えて室温で 20 分反応した。反応液を減圧濃縮し、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー (ヘキサン : 酢酸エチル = 3 : 1) にて精製し、標題化合物 45 mg (収率 48%) を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, d, J = 6. 8, CH(CH₃)₂) , 1. 29 (3H, d, J = 6. 2, 4-CH₃) , 2. 50~2. 80 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂) , 2. 80~3. 00 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2) , 3. 45 (1H, b s, H-8) , 4. 80~5. 00 (2H, m, H-4, 7) , 5. 09 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂OCO) , 5. 00~5. 30 (2H, m, H-3, 8) , 5. 45 (1H, d, J = 7. 8, CONH) , 7. 09~7. 33 (10H, m, C₆H₅ × 2)

MS (E I) : m/z = 497 (M)

例4

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(2-Hydroxynicotinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanenedione :

例1 (2) 40 mg、2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸20 mg及び1-ヒドロキシベンゾトリアゾール20 mgをピリジン2 mLに溶解し、これに1-エチル-3-(3'-ジメチルアミノプロピル)カルボジイミド塩酸塩29 mgのテトラヒドロフラン(THF、2 mL)溶液を加えて、室温で3時間反応した。反応液に塩化メチレンと水を加えて分液し、有機層を硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー(酢酸エチル:ヘキサン=4:1)にて精製し、標題化合物28 mg(収率78%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 24 (6H, d, J = 7. 0, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 32 (3H, d, J = 6. 2, 4-CH₃), 2. 58 ~ 2. 73 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 89 ~ 3. 05 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 63 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 94 ~ 5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 18 ~ 5. 25 (2H, m, H-3, H-7), 5. 40 (1H, b s, H-8), 6. 55 (1H, t, J = 6. 8, H-5'), 7. 12 ~ 7. 29 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 7. 63 (1H, dd, J = 6. 8, 2. 2, H-4'), 8. 57 (1H, dd, J = 6. 8, 2. 2, H-6'), 10. 31 (1H, d, CONH, J = 6. 8), 12. 78 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 485 (M+H)

例5

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(6-Hydroxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を6-ヒドロキシピコリン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率52%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.05~1.34 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.60~2.75 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.87~3.05 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.73 (1H, bs, H-8), 4.46 (1H, d, OH, J=8.9), 4.94~5.00 (1H, m, H-4), 5.18~5.32 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6.78 (1H, d, J=8.9, aromatic (pyridine ring)), 7.12~7.30 (8H, m, aromatic (pyridine ring, C₆H₅)), 7.58 (1H, dd, J=7.0, 2.2, aromatic (pyridine ring)), 8.18 (1H, d, J=7.3, CONH,)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 485 (M+H)

例6

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(2, 4-Dihydroxypyrimidine-5-carboxylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を2, 4-ジヒドロキシピリミジン-5-カルボン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率23%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.05~1.32 (9H, m, 4-CH₃, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.59~2.72 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.90~3.00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.60 (1H, bs, H-8), 4.22 (1H, bd, OH), 4.90~5.40

(4 H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7. 11~7. 26 (8 H, m, C₆H₅),
8. 51 (1 H, s, aromatic (pyrimidine ring)),
9. 29 (1 H, d, J=7. 3, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 502 (M+H)

例7

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-2-methylquinoline-4-carboxylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanenedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3-ヒドロキシ-2-メチル-4-キノリンカルボン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率12%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 20~1. 40 (9 H, 4-CH₃, CH₂(CH₃)₂), 2. 77 (3 H, s, CH₃ (quinoline)), 4. 80~5. 40 (4 H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6. 80~8. 00 (10 H, m, aromatic), 11. 34 (1 H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 549 (M+H)

例8

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-2-quinoxalinecarboxylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanenedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3-ヒドロキシ-2-キノキサリンカルボン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率27%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23~1. 37 (9 H, m; J=7. 1, 1. 1, CH₂(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 60~2. 75 (2 H, m, CH₂(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 90~3. 10 (2 H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 66 (1 H, bs, H-8), 4. 99~5. 51 (4 H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7. 13~8. 12 (10 H, m, CONH, aromatic (benzene ring)), 11. 78 (1 H, s, O

H)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 536 (M+H)

例9

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3, 6-dihydroxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3, 6-ジヒドロキシピコリン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率22%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, m, J = 2, 5, 6, 8, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 33 (3H, d, J = 6, 3, 4 - CH₃), 2. 60 ~ 2. 73 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 90 ~ 3. 05 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 70 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 93 ~ 4. 99 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 13 ~ 5. 25 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 82 (1H, d, J = 5, 4, H-5'), 7. 12 ~ 7. 30 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 7. 33 (1H, d, J = 5, 4, H-6'), 8. 49 (1H, d, J = 8, 4, CONH), 11. 35 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 501 (M+H)

例10

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Benzylxy-4, 6-dimethoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3-ベンジルオキシ-4, 6-ジメトキシピコリン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率92%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 22 (6H, dd, J = 1, 6, 7, 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 30 (3H, d, J = 6, 8, 4 - CH₃), 2. 60 ~ 2. 72 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 90 ~ 3. 00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 49 (1H, b s, H-8),

3. 32, 3. 92 (each 3H, each s, 4' -OCH₃, 6' -OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5. 18~5. 30 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 33 (1H, s, H-5'), 7. 12~7. 50 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 8. 34 (1H, d, J=8. 4, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 635 (M+H)

例11

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Benzylxy-4, 5-dimethoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3-ベンジルオキシ-4, 5-ジメトキシピコリン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率97%）を得た。

1H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J=1. 6, 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 31 (3H, d, J=6. 8, 4-CH₃), 2. 60~2. 72 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 90~3. 00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 49 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 96, 3. 99 (each 3H, each s, 4' -OCH₃, 5' -OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5. 18~5. 30 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 7. 12~7. 52 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 8. 06 (1H, s, H-6'), 8. 31 (1H, d, J=8. 4, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 635 (M+H)

例12

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-4, 6-dimethoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

例10の化合物6. 4mgに10%パラジウム-炭素7mgを加え、窒素置換した

後メタノール30mlを加えた。更に水素置換した後激しく攪拌し反応させた。1時間後触媒を濾去し、さらに触媒を1N-塩酸で洗浄した。塩化メチレンで抽出した後、硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した。減圧濃縮して標題化合物5.0mg(収率9.2%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6H, dd, J = 1.6, 7.3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.33 (3H, d, J = 6.8, 4-CH₃), 2.60 ~ 2.72 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.90 ~ 3.00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.58 (1H, bs, H-8), 3.89 (6H, s, 4'-OCH₃, 6'-OCH₃), 4.90 ~ 5.00 (1H, m, H-4), 5.10 ~ 5.40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6.30 (1H, s, H-5'), 7.11 ~ 7.33 (5H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 8.35 (1H, d, J = 8.4, CONH), 11.44 (1H, s, 3'-OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 545 (M+H)

例13

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-4,5-dimethoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanenedione :

例10の化合物を例11の化合物に代えた以外は例12と同様の方法にて標題化合物(収率45%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6H, dd, J = 1.6, 7.3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.33 (3H, d, J = 6.8, 4-CH₃), 2.60 ~ 2.72 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.80 ~ 3.00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.58 (1H, bs, H-8), 3.98, 4.03 (each 3H, each s, 4'-OCH₃, 5'-OCH₃), 4.90 ~ 5.00 (1H, m, H-4), 5.10 ~ 5.40

(3 H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 7.11~7.27 (5 H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 7.81 (1 H, s, H-6'), 8.37 (1 H, d, J=8.4, CONH), 11.70 (1 H, s, 3'-OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 545 (M+H)

例14

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-Benzylxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanenedione :

例13の化合物500mgをアセトン25mlに溶解し、無水炭酸カリウム134mg次いで臭化ベンジル136μlを加え、60°Cにて3時間加熱した。溶媒を減圧留去した後、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（ヘキサン-酢酸エチル=1:1）にて精製し、標題化合物319mg(収率39%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6 H, dd, J=1.6, 7.3, CH₂(CH₃)₂), 1.31 (3 H, d, J=6.8, 4-CH₃), 2.58~2.71 (2 H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.88~3.02 (2 H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.52 (1 H, bs, H-8), 3.91 (3 H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4.90~5.00 (1 H, m, H-4), 5.10 (2 H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5.18~5.35 (3 H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6.94 (1 H, d, J=5.4, H-5'), 7.12~7.52 (10 H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 8.25 (1 H, d, J=5.4, H-6'), 8.38 (1 H, d, J=8.4, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 605 (M+H)

例15

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-Benzylxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino-N-oxide)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanenedione :

例14の化合物 315mgを塩化メチレン15mlに溶解し、m-過安息香

酸(70%)385mgを加えて、室温にて5時間反応した。反応液を5%重曹水次いで10%チオ硫酸ナトリウム水溶液で洗浄した後、溶媒を減圧留去し、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー(クロロホルム-メタノール=20:1~10:1)にて精製し、標題化合物277mg(収率86%)を得た。

¹H-NMR(CDC1₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, d d, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂) , 1. 28 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃) , 2. 56 ~2. 70 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂) , 2. 86~3. 02 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂) , 3. 56 (1H, b s, H-8) , 3. 93 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃) , 4. 89~4. 95 (1H, m, H-4) , 5. 12 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O) , 5. 09~5. 40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8) , 6. 82 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-5') , 7. 10~7. 48 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O) , 8. 05 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-6') , 9. 00 (1H, d, J = 8. 4, CONH)

MS(TSP) : m/z = 621 (M+H)

例16

- (1) (2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Benzylxy-4-methoxy-6-acetoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanenedione : および
 (2) (2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Benzylxy-6-hydroxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanenedione :

例15の化合物277mgを無水酢酸25mlに溶解し、80°Cにて2. 5時間加熱した。反応液を濃縮し、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー(ヘキサン：酢酸エチル=1:1)、さらにシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー(クロロホルム：メタノール=30:1)にて精製し、標記化合物(1)30mg(収率10%)および標記化合物(2)9mg(収率3%)を得た。

標題化合物(1)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 30 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 2. 33 (3H, s, 6-E-OCOCH₃), 2. 50~2. 72 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 90~2. 99 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 91 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 06 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5. 08~5. 40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 7. 12 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-5'), 7. 13~7. 57 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 7. 50 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-6'), 8. 13 (1H, d, J = 8. 4, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 663 (M+H)

標題化合物(2)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 18 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 25 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 2. 50~2. 70 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 86~3. 02 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂, H-8), 3. 86 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 80~5. 23 (6H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8, C₆H₅CH₂O), 6. 02 (1H, s, H-5'), 7. 04~7. 29 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 8. 49 (1H, d, J = 7. 2, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 621 (M+H)

例17

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-6-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3-ヒドロキシ-6-メトキシピコリン酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物 1.6 mg (収率 1.6%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6H, d d, J = 2.5, 6.8, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.32 (3H, d, J = 6.3, 4-CH₃), 2.60 ~ 2.75 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.90 ~ 3.00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.62 (1H, b s, H-8), 3.94 (3H, s, 6'-OCH₃), 4.97 ~ 5.00 (1H, m, H-4), 5.16 ~ 5.30 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6.87 (1H, d, J = 5.1, H-5'), 7.12 ~ 7.28 (5H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 7.98 (1H, d, J = 5.1, H-6'), 8.59 (1H, d, J = 8.1, CONH), 11.78 (1H, s, 3'-OH)

MS (FAB) : m/z = 515 (M+H)

例18

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Acetoxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

UK-2A 6.32 g をピリジン 8.0 mL に溶解し、氷冷下にて無水酢酸 2.5 mL を加えて、室温で 3 時間反応した。反応液を減圧濃縮乾固し、白色固体として標題化合物 6.7 g (収率 100%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.24 (6H, d, J = 6.9, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.30 (3H, d, J = 6.2, 4-CH₃), 2.38 (3H, s, OCOCH₃), 2.61 (1H, septet, J = 6.9, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.70 (1H, d, J = 11.4, C₆H₅CH₂),

2. 87~2. 99 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 57 (1H, b s, H-8), 3. 90 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4. 96 (1H, d q, J = 9. 5, 6. 2, H-4), 5. 14 (1H, t, J = 8. 4, H-7), 5. 20 (1H, t, J = 9. 5, H-3), 5. 34 (1H, b s, H-8), 7. 01 (1H, d, J = 5. 5, H-5'), 7. 11~7. 28 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 8. 32 (1H, d, J = 5. 5, H-6'), 8. 63 (1H, d, CONH, J = 8. 4)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 557 (M+H)

例19

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Benzoyloxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanenedione :

UK-2A 50 mg をピリジン 5 mL に溶解し、氷冷下塩化ベンゾイル 27 mg を加えて室温で 2 時間反応した。反応液を塩化メチレンで稀釈し、水洗を 2 回行つた後、硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥し、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（酢酸エチル：ヘキサン = 3 : 1）にて精製し、標題化合物 33 mg (収率 55%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 22 (6H, d, J = 7. 1, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 27 (3H, d, J = 6. 0, 4-CH₃), 2. 50 ~ 2. 70 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 80~3. 00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 60 (1H, b s, H-8), 3. 89 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 30 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7. 06 (1H, d, J = 5. 5, H-5'), 7. 09~7. 26 (5H, m, CH₂C₆H₅), 7. 48~7. 66, 8. 20~8. 23 (3H, 2H, m, COC₆H₅), 8. 38 (1H, d, J = 5. 5, H-6'), 8. 66 (1H, d, J = 8. 2, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 619 (M+H)

例20

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Isopropylcarbonyloxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

UK-2A 50 mg を塩化メチレン 5 mL に溶解し、氷冷下トリエチルアミン 1 mL とクロロ蚁酸イソプロピル 1 mL を加えて室温で 1 時間反応した。反応液を塩化メチレンで稀釈し、水洗を 2 回行った後、硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥し、減圧濃縮して標題化合物 58 mg (収率 100%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.20~1.40 (15H, m, OCOCH(CH₃)₂, OCH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.50~2.80 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.80~3.10 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.60 (1H, b s, H-8), 3.92 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4.93~5.40 (5H, m, OCH(CH₃)₂, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7.02 (1H, d, J=5.5, H-5'), 7.11~7.29 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 8.33 (1H, d, J=5.5, H-6'), 8.58 (1H, d, J=8.2, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 601 (M+H)

例21

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(3-Methoxycarbonylpropionyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

コハク酸クロリド 0.22 mL と塩化メチレン 5 mL との混合物に氷冷下 UK-2A 100 mg とトリエチルアミン 0.27 mL との塩化メチレン (20 mL) 溶液を滴下した。室温で 2 時間反応した後、再び氷冷してメタノール 10 mL を加え室温で 1 時間反応した。反応液を塩化メチレンで稀釈し、水洗を 2 回行った後、硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥し、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラ

ラフィー(酢酸エチル:ヘキサン=1:1)にて精製し、標題化合物53mg

(収率44%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6H, d, J = 7.1, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.31 (3H, d, J = 6.0, 4-CH₃), 2.50 ~ 3.10 (8H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, COCH₂CH₂CO, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3.72 (3H, s, COOCH₃), 3.90 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4.90~5.40 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7.00 (1H, d, J = 5.4, H-5'), 7.11~7.28 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 8.32 (1H, d, J = 5.4, H-6'), 8.62 (1H, d, J = 8.4, CONH)

MS (FAB) : m/z = 629 (M+H)

例22

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-(3-Benzylloxycarbonylpropionyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanenedione : UK-2A 100mg、コハク酸モノベンジルエステル49mg及び4-ジメチルアミノピリジン55mgを塩化メチレン20mLに溶解し、氷冷下ジシクロヘキシカルボジイミド60mgを加えて室温で6時間反応した。析出物を濾去して濾液を1N塩酸、飽和重曹水、水で順次洗浄し、硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー(酢酸エチル:ヘキサン=1:1)にて精製し、標題化合物92mg(収率69%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.24 (6H, d, J = 7.1, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.30 (3H, d, J = 6.0, 4-CH₃), 2.58 ~ 3.07 (8H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, COCH₂CH₂CO, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3.55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3.86 (3H, s, OCH₃), 5.16 (2H, s, COOCH₂C₆H₅), 4.90~5.40 (4H, m,

H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6. 99 (1H, d, J=5. 4, H-5'), 7. 1
1~7. 37 (10H, m, C₆H₅ × 2), 8. 31 (1H, d, J=5. 4,
H-6'), 8. 61 (1H, d, J=8. 4, CONH)

MS (FAB) : m/z = 705 (M+H)

例23

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(4-Methoxycarbonylbutyryloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

コハク酸クロリドをグルタル酸クロリドに代えた以外は例21と同様の方法にて標題化合物(収率20%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J=1. 6, 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 29 (3H, d, J=6. 8, 4-CH₃), 2. 09 (2H, q, J=7. 3, CH₂CH₂CH₂), 2. 50, 2. 75 (each 2H, each t, each J=7. 3, CH₂CH₂CH₂), 2. 58~2. 70 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 90~3. 00 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 60 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 69 (3H, s, COOCH₃), 3. 89 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10~5. 40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 7. 00 (1H, d, J=5. 4, H-5'), 7. 10~7. 28 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 8. 32 (1H, d, J=5. 4, H-6'), 8. 61 (1H, d, J=8. 4, CONH)

MS (ESI) : m/z = 643 (M+H)

例24

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(5-Methoxycarbonylvaleryloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

コハク酸クロリドをアジピン酸クロリドに代えた以外は例21と同様の方法に

て標題化合物（収率5.7%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH₂(CH₃)₂), 1. 30 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 1. 59 ~1. 67, 1. 78~1. 86 (each 2H, each m, CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂), 2. 23~2. 48 (4H, m, CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂), 2. 56~2. 99 (4H, m, H-2, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 62 (3H, s, COOCH₃), 3. 88 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 93~4. 99 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 16~5. 32 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 99 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-5'), 7. 10~7. 28 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 8. 30 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-6'), 8. 59 (1H, d, J = 8. 4, CO NH)

MS (ESI) : m/z = 657 (M+H)

例25

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-(6-Methoxycarbonylhexanoyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclononanedione :

コハク酸クロリドをピメリン酸クロリドに代えた以外は例21と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率8.5%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH₂(CH₃)₂), 1. 30 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 1. 35 ~1. 84 (6H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₃CH₂), 2. 29~2. 38 (4H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₃CH₂), 2. 58~2. 70 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 90~3. 00 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 67 (3H, s, COOCH₃), 3. 89 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 1

0 (1H, m, H-4), 5.10~5.30 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8),
 7.00 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-5'), 7.10~7.28 (5H, m,
 C_6H_5), 8.32 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-6'), 8.62 (1H, d,
 J=8.4, CONH)

MS (ESI) : m/z = 671 (M+H)

例26

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-(8-Methoxycarbonyloctanoyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclononanedione :
 コハク酸クロリドをアゼライン酸クロリドに代えた以外は例21と同様の方法
 にて標題化合物（収率24%）を得た。

1H -NMR ($CDCl_3$) : δ = 1.23 (6H, dd, J=1.6, 7.3, $CH(CH_3)_2$), 1.30 (3H, d, J=6.8, $4-CH_3$), 1.30 ~1.90 (1.0H, m, $CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_2$), 2.27~2.37 (4H, m, $CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_2$), 2.50~2.80 (2H, m, $CH(CH_3)_2$, $C_6H_5CH_2$), 2.80~3.10 (2H, m, $C_6H_5CH_2$, H-2), 3.55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3.66 (3H, s, $COOCH_3$), 3.89 (3H, s, 4' - OCH_3), 4.90~5.00 (1H, m, H-4), 5.10~5.40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 7.00 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-5'), 7.10~7.26 (5H, m, C_6H_5), 8.31 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-6'), 8.61 (1H, d, J=8.4, CONH)

MS (ESI) : m/z = 699 (M+H)

例27

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-(9-Methoxycarbonylnonanoyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclononanedione :

コハク酸クロリドをセバシン酸クロリドに代えた以外は例21と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率45%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH₂(CH₃)₂), 1. 30 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 1. 31 ~1. 80 (12H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₆CH₂), 2. 28~2. 33 (4H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₆CH₂), 2. 50~2. 70 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 90~3. 00 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 66 (3H, s, COOCH₃), 3. 89 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10~5. 40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 99 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-5'), 7. 10~7. 28 (5H, m, C₆H₅), 8. 31 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-6'), 8. 62 (1H, d, J = 8. 4, CONH)

MS (ESI) : m/z = 713 (M+H)

例28

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-(4-Benzylloxycarbonylbutyryloxy)-4-methoxypicolinyl amino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanenedione :

グルタル酸クロリド0. 064mlを含む塩化メチレン溶液6mlに、ベンジルアルコール0. 052ml及びトリエチルアミン0. 083mlを含む塩化メチレン溶液2mlを氷冷下滴下した。同温で30分攪拌した後、UK-2A 100mg及びトリエチルアミン0. 14mlを含む塩化メチレン溶液2mlを滴下し、氷冷下3時間反応した。反応液に水を加えて分液し、有機層を硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（酢酸エチル-ヘキサン=1:1）にて精製し、標題化合物122mg（収率89%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 24 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH₂(CH₃)₂), 1. 29 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 2. 11 (2H, q, J = 7. 3, CH₂CH₂CH₂), 2. 40~2. 70 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 55, 2. 75 (each 2H, each t, each J = 7. 3, CH₂CH₂CH₂), 2. 80~3. 10 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 86 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 14 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5. 10~5. 35 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 99 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-5'), 7. 10~7. 37 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 8. 31 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-6'), 8. 60 (1H, d, J = 8. 4, CONH)

MS (FAB) : m/z = 719 (M+H)

例29

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(5-Benzylloxycarbonylvaleryloxy)-4-methoxypicolinyl amino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanenedione : グルタル酸クロリドをアジピン酸クロリドに代えた以外は例28と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率25%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH₂(CH₃)₂), 1. 29 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 1. 70~1. 80 (4H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₂CH₂), 2. 30~2. 50 (4H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₂CH₂), 2. 60~2. 70 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 80~3. 00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 85 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 12 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5. 10~5. 40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 98 (1H, d,

$J = 5.4, H - 5'$), 7.10~7.35 (10H, m, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $C_6H_5CH_2O$), 8.31 (1H, d, $J = 5.4, H - 6'$), 8.60 (1H, d, $J = 8.4, CONH$)

MS (FAB) : $m/z = (M+H)$

例30

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(6-Benzylloxycarbonylhexanoyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanonanedione :

グルタル酸クロリドをピメリン酸クロリドに代えた以外は例28と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率62%）を得た。

1H -NMR ($CDCl_3$) : $\delta = 1.23$ (6H, dd, $J = 1.6, 7.3, CH(CH_3)_2$), 1.29 (3H, d, $J = 6.8, 4 - CH_3$), 1.37~1.86 (6H, m, $CH_2(CH_2)_3CH_2$), 2.31~2.45 (4H, m, $(CH_2(CH_2)_3CH_2$), 2.58~2.71 (2H, m, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $CH(CH_3)_2$), 2.91~2.99 (2H, m, $H - 2, C_6H_5CH_2$), 3.55 (1H, bs, $H - 8$), 3.87 (3H, s, $4' - OCH_3$), 4.90~5.00 (1H, m, $H - 4$), 5.11 (2H, s, $C_6H_5CH_2O$), 5.11~5.40 (3H, m, $H - 3, 7, 8$), 6.99 (1H, d, $J = 5.4, H - 5'$), 7.10~7.36 (10H, m, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $C_6H_5CH_2O$), 8.31 (1H, d, $J = 5.4, H - 6'$), 8.61 (1H, d, $J = 8.4, CONH$)

MS (FAB) : $m/z = 747 (M+H)$

例31

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(9-Benzylloxycarbonylnonanoyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanonanedione :

グルタル酸クロリドをセバシン酸クロリドに代えた以外は例28と同様の方法

にて標題化合物（収率53%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6H, dd, J = 1.6, 7.3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.29 (3H, d, J = 6.8, 4-CH₃), 1.30 ~ 1.90 (2H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₆CH₂), 2.30 ~ 2.38 (4H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₆CH₂), 2.61 ~ 2.68 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.90 ~ 3.05 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3.88 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4.90 ~ 5.00 (1H, m, H-4), 5.11 (2H, s, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5.11 ~ 5.35 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8,), 6.99 (1H, d, J = 5.4, H-5'), 7.10 ~ 7.36 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 8.31 (1H, d, J = 5.4, H-6'), 8.60 (1H, d, J = 8.4, CONH).

MS (FAB) : m/z = 789 (M+H)

例32

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-(4-Butyloxycarbonylbutyryloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclononanedione :

ベンジルアルコールをn-ブタノールに代えた以外は例28と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率53%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6H, dd, J = 1.6, 7.3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.33 (3H, d, J = 6.8, 4-CH₃), 1.37 ~ 1.46, 1.57 ~ 1.65, 2.04 ~ 2.11 (9H, m, COCH₂CH₂CO, OCH₂(CH₂)₂CH₃), 2.37 ~ 2.51 (4H, m, COCH₂CH₂CH₂CO), 2.58 ~ 2.77 (2H, m, COCH₂CH₂CH₂CO, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3.89 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4.90 ~ 5.00 (1H, m, H-

4), 5.00~5.40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 7.00 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-5'), 7.10~7.28 (5H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 8.32 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-6'), 8.63 (1H, d, J=8.4, CONH) \equiv

MS (FAB) : m/z = 685 (M+H)

例33

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(6-carboxyhexanoyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanonanedione :

例30の化合物 77mgをメタノール40mlに溶解し、10%パラジウム-炭素8mgを加えて室温、常圧にて接触水素添加反応を行った。2時間後、反応液から触媒を濾去し、濾液を濃縮乾固した。残渣をシリカゲルクロマトグラフィー（クロロホルム-メタノール=30:1）にて精製し、標題化合物44.8mg（収率66%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.23 (6H, dd, J=1.6, 7.3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1.29 (3H, d, J=6.8, 4-CH₃), 1.40~1.80 (6H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₃CH₂), 2.20~2.40 (4H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₃CH₂), 2.50~2.70 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2.90~3.00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3.55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3.88 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4.90~5.00 (1H, m, H-4'), 5.10~5.40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 7.00 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-5'), 7.10~7.26 (5H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 8.30 (1H, d, J=5.4, H-6'), 8.62 (1H, d, J=8.4, CONH)

MS (FAB) : m/z = 657 (M+H)

例34

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(9-carboxynonanoyloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

例30の化合物を例31の化合物に代えた以外は例33と同様の方法にて標題化合物(収率59%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 29 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4-CH₃), 1. 31 ~ 1. 76 (12H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₆CH₂), 2. 30 ~ 2. 40 (4H, m, CH₂(CH₂)₆CH₂), 2. 50 ~ 2. 71 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 90 ~ 3. 00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 57 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 88 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90 ~ 5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10 ~ 5. 23 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 99 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-5'), 7. 10 ~ 7. 34 (5H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 8. 31 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-6'), 8. 62 (1H, d, J = 8. 4, CONH)

MS (FAB) : m/z = 699 (M+H)

例35

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(N-Carbobenzyl oxy-L-alanyl)oxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

UK-2A 200mg、N-カルボベニジルオキシ-L-アラニン170mg及びジメチルアミノピリジン186mgを塩化メチレン10mlに溶解し、1-エチル-3-(3-ジメチルアミノプロピル)カルボジイミド塩酸塩218mgを加えて、室温で4時間反応した。反応液にジクロロメタンと1N塩酸を加えて分液し、有機層を硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシリカゲルクロマトグラフィー(クロロホルム-メタノール=100:1)にて精製し、

標題化合物 1 4 3 m g (収率 5 2 %) を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH (CH₃)₂), 1. 33 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4 - CH₃), 1. 62 (3H, d, CH₃ (alanine)), 2. 59~2. 72 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH (CH₃)₂), 2. 92~3. 00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 55 (1H, bs, H-8), 3. 87 (3H, s, 4' - OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10~5. 40 (5H, m, H-3, 7, 8, C₆H₅CH₂O), 5. 70 (1H, bs, CONH (alanine)), 7. 00 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-5'), 7. 11~7. 36 (10H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, C₆H₅CH₂O), 8. 32 (1H, d, J = 5. 4, H-6'), 8. 63 (1H, m, J = 8. 4, CO NH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 720 (M+H)

例36

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Diphenyphosphoryloxy-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

UK-2A 100 m g および 4-ジメチルアミノピリジン 36 m g を塩化メチレン 3 m l に溶解し、氷冷下ピリジン 24 μl およびジフェニル クロロホスフェイト 79 m g を加えて、室温で 2 時間反応した。塩化メチレンで稀釈した後、1 N 塩酸、水で順次洗浄し、有機層を硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した。減圧濃縮し、残渣をシリカゲルクロマトグラフィー (酢酸エチル-ヘキサン = 2 : 1) にて精製して標題化合物 140 m g (収率 99%) を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 27 (6H, dd, J = 1. 6, 7. 3, CH (CH₃)₂), 1. 32 (3H, d, J = 6. 8, 4 - CH₃), 2. 60 ~ 2. 80 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH (CH₃)₂), 2. 90~3. 10

(2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 55 (1H, b s, H-8),
 3. 67 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10~5. 32 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 98 (1H, d, J=5. 4, H-5'), 7. 15~7. 36 (15H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, (C₆H₅O)₂PO), 8. 31 (1H, d, J=5. 4, H-6'), 8. 41 (1H, d, J=8. 4, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 605 (M+H)

例37

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Diethoxyphosphoryloxy)-4-methoxypicolinylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

ジフェニルクロロホスフェイトをジエチルクロロホスフェイトに代えた以外は例36と同様にして標題化合物(収率43%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, dd, J=1. 6, 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 30 (3H, d, J=6. 8, 4-CH₃), 1. 33~1. 40 (6H, m, (OCH₂CH₃)₂), 2. 59~2. 72 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, CH(CH₃)₂), 2. 90~3. 00 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 60 (1H, b s, H-8), 3. 93 (3H, s, 4'-OCH₃), 4. 23~4. 38 (4H, m, (OCH₂CH₃)₂), 4. 90~5. 00 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10~5. 40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 98 (1H, d, J=5. 4, H-5'), 7. 11~7. 28 (5H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 8. 25 (1H, d, J=5. 4, H-6'), 8. 38 (1H, d, J=8. 4, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 651 (M+H)

例38

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Methoxysalicylamino)-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3-メトキシサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率74%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 24 (6H, d, J = 7. 3, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 33 (3H, d, J = 6. 5, 4-CH₃), 2. 60 ~ 2. 73 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 92 ~ 3. 05 (2H, m, H-2, C₆H₅CH₂), 3. 63 (1H, b s, H-8), 3. 90 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4. 90 ~ 5. 26 (3H, m, H-3, 4, 7), 5. 18 ~ 5. 25 (2H, m, H-3, H-7), 5. 45 (1H, b s, H-8), 6. 81 ~ 7. 29 (8H, m, aromatic), 7. 46 (1H, d, J = 6. 5, CONH), 10. 75 (1H, s, OH)
MS (TSP) : m/z = 514 (M+H)

例39

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-Salicylamino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸をサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率42%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 20 ~ 1. 36 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 60 ~ 2. 80 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 91 ~ 3. 00 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 60 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 98 ~ 5. 27 (3H, m, H-3, 4, 7), 5. 45 (1H, b s, H-8), 6. 84 ~ 7. 44 (10H, m, aromatic, CONH), 11. 80 (1H,

s, OH)

MS (TPS) : m/z = 484 (M+H)

例40

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Nitrosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3-ニトロサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率66%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 1. 23~1. 37 (9H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 60~2. 80 (2H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 80~3. 10 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 60 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 98 (1H, b s, H-4), 5. 18~5. 30 (2H, m, H-3, 7), 5. 42 (1H, b s, H-8), 7. 06~7. 29 (6H, m, C₆H₅, H-6'), 8. 27 (1H, d, J=7. 6, H-5'), 8. 45 (1H, d, J=7. 6, H-4'), 8. 76 (1H, b s, CONH)

MS (TPS) : m/z = 527 (M-H)

例41

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Aminosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

例40の化合物50mgをメタノール25mLに溶解し、10%パラジウム炭素5mgを加えて、室温常圧にて1時間水素添加した。触媒を濾去した後、濾液を減圧濃縮し、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（酢酸エチル：ヘキサン=1:1）にて精製し、標題化合物16mg（収率34%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, d, J=7. 3, CH (CH₃)₂), 1. 33 (3H, d, J=5. 9, 4-CH₃), 2. 60

~2.80 (2H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.92~3.00
 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3.60 (1H, b s, H-8),
 4.00 (2H, b s, NH₂), 4.98 (1H, b s, H-4), 5.00
 ~5.50 (2H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 5.42 (1H, b s, H-8)
 , 6.66~7.29 (9H, m, aromatic, CONH), 12.0
 0 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 499 (M+H)

例42

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-Formylaminosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanonanedione :

例41の化合物8.8mgを塩化メチレン1mLに溶解し、蟻酸0.5mL次いで無水酢酸0.1mLを加えて、室温で30分反応した。塩化メチレンと水を加えて分液し、有機層を硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（酢酸エチル：ヘキサン=1:1）にて精製し、標題化合物4.2mg（収率44%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.20~1.40 (9H, m,
CH (CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.60~2.80 (2H, m,
CH (CH₃)₂, CH₂C₆H₅), 2.80~3.10 (2H, m,
CH₂C₆H₅, H-2), 3.59 (1H, b s, H-8), 5.00~5.2
 6 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6.66~7.29 (8H, m, aro
 matic), 12.00 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 527 (M+H)

例43

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(5-Nitrosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を5-ニトロサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物(収率84%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 22~1. 43 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 61~2. 75 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 90~3. 01 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 68 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 90~5. 40 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7. 00~7. 30 (6H, m, H-3'), 7. 58 (1H, d, J=6. 5, CONH), 8. 27 (1H, dd, J=8. 9, 2. 2, H-4'), 8. 46 (1H, d, J=2. 2, H-6')

MS (TSP) : m/z = 527 (M-H)

例44

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(5-Aminosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

例4.0の化合物を例4.3に代えた以外は例4.1と同様の方法にて標題化合物(収率49%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 20~1. 40 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 58~2. 80 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2. 88~3. 04 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 58 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 90~5. 40 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6. 70~7. 30 (9H, m, aromatic, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 499 (M+H)

例45

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(4-Chlorosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryl
oxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を4-クロロサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様
の方法にて標題化合物(収率26%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 23 (6H, d, J = 7. 0,
CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 34 (3H, d, J = 6. 5, 4-CH₃), 2. 40
~3. 00 (4H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 60
(1H, b s, H-8), 4. 90~5. 60 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8)
, 6. 83~7. 36 (9H, m, aromatic, CONH), 11. 99
(1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 518 (M+H)

例46

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(5-Chlorosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryl
oxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を5-クロロサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様
の方法にて標題化合物(収率60%)を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 20~1. 40 (9H, m,
CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 50~3. 00 (4H, m,
CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3. 60 (1H, b s, H-8),
4. 98~5. 42 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6. 90~8. 01
(9H, m, aromatic, CONH), 11. 71 (1H, s, OH)

例47

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(4-Methoxysalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryl

loxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclononanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を4-メトキシサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率37%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (⁷CDCl₃) : δ = 1.20~1.40 (9H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.60~2.80 (2H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.80~3.10 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3.60 (1H, b s, H-8), 3.80 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4.90~5.50 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6.50~7.40 (8H, m, aromatic), 12.10 (1H, s, OH)

TSP-MS : m/z = 514 (M+H)

例48

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3, 5-Dinitrosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

2-ヒドロキシニコチン酸を3, 5-ジニトロサリチル酸に代えた以外は例4と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率98%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.00~1.30 (9H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.50~2.70 (2H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.70~2.90 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3.60 (1H, b s, H-8), 4.60~5.20 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7.00~7.30 (5H, m, C₆H₅CH₂), 7.60 (1H, b s, CONH), 8.60~8.90 (2H, m, aromatic (3, 5-Dinitrosalicyl))

MS (TSP) : m/z = 573 (M+H)

例49

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-(N, N-Dimethylamino)salicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

例40の化合物-30mgをメタノール5mLに溶解し、40%ホルマリン1mLと10%パラジウム炭素3mgを加えて、室温常圧にて8時間水素添加した。触媒を濾去した後、濾液を減圧濃縮し、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（塩化メチレン：酢酸エチル=3:1）にて精製し、標題化合物8.0mg（収率27%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.29~1.34 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.60~2.73 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.73 (6H, s, N(CH₃)₂), 2.92~3.00 (2H, m, C₆H₅CH₂, H-2), 3.60 (1H, bs, H-8), 4.90~5.50 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6.88 (1H, t, J=7.6, H-4'), 7.11~7.29 (6H, m, C₆H₅, H-5'), 7.51 (1H, d, J=9.5, H-6'), 7.96 (1H, d, J=8.2, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 527 (M+H)

例50

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(5-(N, N-Dimethylamino)salicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

例40の化合物を例43の化合物に代えた以外は、例41同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率26%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.20~1.40 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.50~2.80 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, C₆H₅CH₂), 2.87 (6H, s, N(CH₃)₂),

2. 80~3. 00 (2H, m, $C_6H_5CH_2$, H-2), 3. 61 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 90~5. 50 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6. 67~7. 30 (9H, m, aromatic, CONH), 11. 04 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 527 (M+H)

例51

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3, 5-diaminosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

例40の化合物を例48の化合物に代えた以外は、例41と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率30%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 25~1. 63 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 61~2. 75 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, $C_6H_5CH_2$), 2. 90~3. 00 (2H, m, $C_6H_5CH_2$, H-2), 3. 64 (1H, b s, H-8), 4. 90~5. 40 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7. 12~7. 39 (7H, m, aromatic, CONH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 514 (M+H)

例52

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(5-Formylaminosalicyl)amino-2-benzyl-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclonanonanedione :

例41の化合物を例44の化合物に代えた以外は、例42と同様の方法にて標題化合物（収率75%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 22~1. 34 (9H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2. 57~2. 73 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, $C_6H_5CH_2$), 2. 80~3. 10 (2H, m,

$C_6H_5CH_2$, H-2), 3.58 (1H, b s, H-8), 5.00~5.24 (4H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 7.06~7.29 (8H, m, aromatic), 11.68 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : $m/z = 527$ ($M+H$)

例53

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-4-methoxypicolinyl)amino-2-(4-nitrobenzyl)-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanonanedione :

UK-2A 30mgを塩化メチレン1.5mLに溶解し、-20°Cに冷却した後、発煙硝酸（比重1.52）0.3mLを加えて、同温度で2時間反応した。反応液を冷却した塩化メチレンで稀釈して、飽和重曹水、水で順次洗浄し、硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮し、標題化合物32mg（収率98%）を得た。

1H -NMR ($CDCl_3$) : $\delta = 1.26$ (6H, d, $J = 7.1$, $CH(CH_3)_2$), 1.34 (3H, d, $J = 6.0$, $4-CH_3$), 2.63~2.90 (2H, m, $CH(CH_3)2$, $CH_2C_6H_4NO_2$), 2.96~3.12 (2H, m, $CH_2C_6H_4NO_2$, H-2), 3.65 (1H, b s, H-8), 3.94 (3H, s, OCH_3), 4.97~5.03 (1H, m, H-4), 5.19~5.30 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6.88 (1H, d, $J = 4.9$, H-5'), 7.31 (2H, d, $J = 8.3$, $C_6H_4NO_2$), 7.98 (1H, d, $J = 4.9$, H-6'), 8.13 (2H, d, $J = 8.3$, $C_6H_4NO_2$), 8.60 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$, CONH), 11.73 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : $m/z = 560$ ($M+H$)

例54

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-4-methoxypicolinyl)amino-2-(4-aminobenzyl)-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

例53の化合物220mgをエタノール50mLに溶解し、10%パラジウム炭素22mgを加えて、室温常圧にて6時間水素添加した。触媒を濾去した後、濾液を減圧濃縮し、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（クロロホルム：メタノール=20:1）にて精製して、標題化合物151mg（収率72%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1. 24 (6H, d, J = 7. 1, CH(CH₃)₂), 1. 34 (3H, d, J = 6. 0, 4-CH₃), 2. 50 ~ 2. 70 (2H, m, CH(CH₃)₂, CH₂C₆H₄NH₂), 2. 80 ~ 3. 00 (2H, m, CH₂C₆H₄NH₂, H-2), 3. 61 (1H, b s, H-8), 3. 94 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4. 90 ~ 5. 10 (1H, m, H-4), 5. 10 ~ 5. 40 (3H, m, H-3, 7, 8), 6. 58 (2H, d, J = 8. 2, C₆H₄NH₂), 6. 87 (1H, d, J = 5. 5, H-5'), 6. 91 (2H, d, J = 8. 2, C₆H₄NH₂), 7. 99 (1H, d, J = 5. 5, H-6'), 8. 59 (1H, d, J = 8. 2, CONH), 11. 79 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 530 (M+H)

例55

(2R, 3R, 4S, 7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-4-methoxypicolinyl)amino-2-(4-formylaminobenzyl)-5, 9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1, 6-cyclononanedione :

例54の化合物29mgを塩化メチレン1mLに溶解し、蟻酸0.5mL次いで無水酢酸0.1mLを加えて、室温で30分反応した。反応液を塩化メチレンで稀釈して水洗をし、硫酸マグネシウムで乾燥した後、減圧濃縮した。残渣をシ

シリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（クロロホルム：メタノール=10:1）にて精製し、標題化合物14mg（収率46%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.20~1.40 (9H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, 4-CH₃), 2.60~2.80 (2H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, CH₂C₆H₄NHCHO), 2.80~3.00 (2H, m, CH₂C₆H₄NHCHO, H-2), 3.60 (1H, b s, H-8), 3.94 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4.90~5.40 (1H, m, H-3, 4, 7, 8), 6.88 (1H, d, J=5.1, H-5'), 6.97~8.64 (4H, m, C₆H₄NHCHO), 7.99 (1H, d, J=5.1, H-6'), 11.79 (1H, s, OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 558 (M+H)

例56

(2R,3R,4S,7S)-7-(3-Hydroxy-4-methoxypicolinyl)amino-2-(4-(N,N-dimethylamino)benzyl)-5,9-dioxa-3-isobutyryloxy-4-methyl-1,6-cyclonanenedione :

例54の化合物30mgをエタノール5mLに溶解し、40%ホルマリン1mLと10%パラジウム炭素3mgを加えて、室温常圧にて4時間水素添加した。触媒を濾去した後、濾液を減圧濃縮し、残渣をシリカゲルカラムクロマトグラフィー（クロロホルム：メタノール=40:1）にて精製して、標題化合物21mg（収率66%）を得た。

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) : δ = 1.24 (6H, d, J=7.1, CH (CH₃)₂), 1.32 (3H, d, J=6.0, 4-CH₃), 2.50~2.70 (2H, m, CH (CH₃)₂, CH₂C₆H₄N (CH₃)₂), 2.80~3.00 (2H, m, CH₂C₆H₄N (CH₃)₂, H-2), 2.90 (6H, s, N (CH₃)₂), 3.60 (1H, b s, H-8), 3.94 (3H, s, OCH₃), 4.90~5.40 (1H, m, H-3, 4,

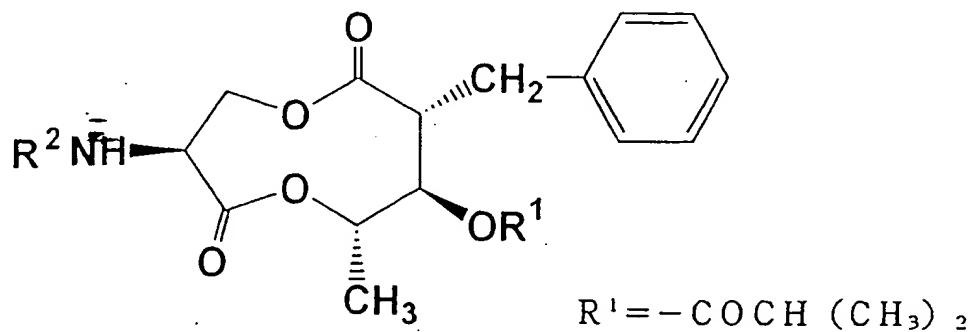
66

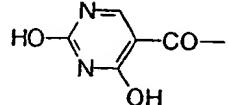
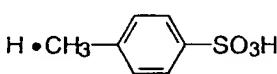
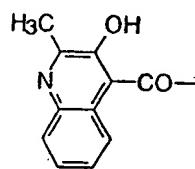
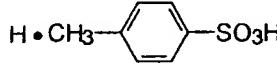
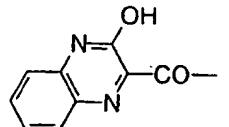
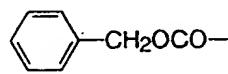
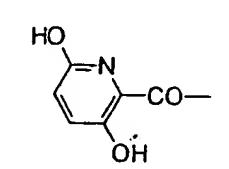
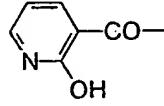
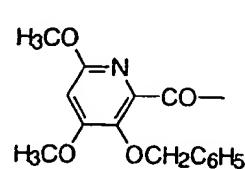
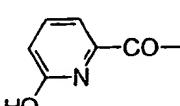
7, 8), 6.64 (2H, d, J = 8.8, $\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$),
6.87 (1H, d, J = 5.1, H - 5'), 6.99 (2H, d, J =
8.8, $\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$), 7.99 (1H, d, J = 5.1, H -
6'), 8.5 (1H, d, J = 8.2, CONH), 11.80 (1H, s,
OH)

MS (TSP) : m/z = 558 (M+H)

上記の諸例で製造された化合物は、下記表1および表2に示した通りのもので
ある。

表1



例	R^2	例	R^2
1 (1)	H	6	
1 (2)		7	
2		8	
3		9	
4		10	
5			

例	R ²	例	R ²
1 1		1 7	
1 2		1 8	
1 3		1 9	
1 4		2 0	
1 5		2 1	
1 6 (1)		2 2	
(2)		2 3	

例	R ²	例	R ²
24		31	
25		32	
26		33	
27		34	
28		35	
29		36	
30		37	

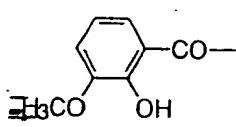
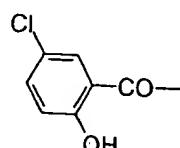
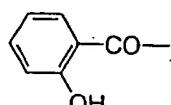
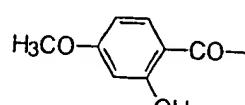
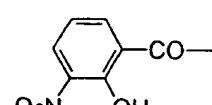
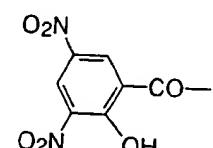
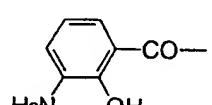
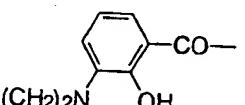
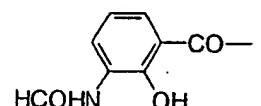
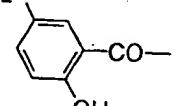
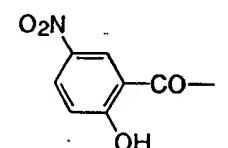
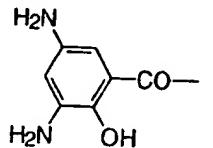
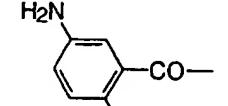
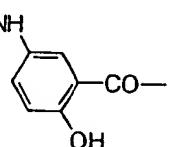
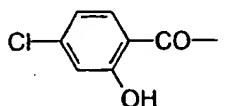
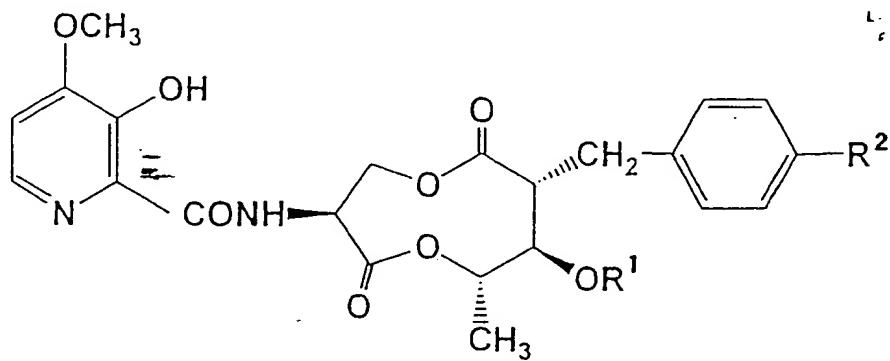
例	R ²	例	R ²
3 8		4 6	
3 9		4 7	
4 0		4 8	
4 1		4 9	
4 2		5 0	
4 3		5 1	
4 4		5 2	
4 5			

表2



例	R^2
5 3	NO_2
5 4	NH_2
5 5	$HCONH$
5 6	$(CH_3)_2N$

試験例1 抗真菌活性評価試験

サッカロマイセス セレビジアエ (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* IF0 0203) を用いて以下の方法により抗真菌活性を試験した。

(1) 使用培地

サブロー培地 (pH 5.5~6.0)

G l u c o s e	40 g/L
---------------	--------

P o l y p e p t o n e	10 g/L
-----------------------	--------

検定培地 (pH 無調節)

Y e a s t e x t. (D I F C O)	10 g/L
------------------------------	--------

P o l y p e p t o n e	20 g/L
-----------------------	--------

G l y c e r o l	30 g/L
-----------------	--------

B a c t o - a g a r (D I F C O)	20 g/L
---------------------------------	--------

(2) 検定菌の調製

サブロー液体培地 (10mL/6分試験管) に1白金耳を植菌し、26°C、24時間振とう培養する (360 rpm; チューブシェイカー)。

(3) 検定平板の調製

検定平板に下層 (寒天20g/L) を広げる。上層用の検定培地を熱融解し、その後45~50°Cにさます。検定培地150mL/250mL三角フラスコに検定菌3~4mL植菌する。下層が固まったことを確認した後、上層培地を広げる。

(4) サンプル評価

各サンプル (μ g) を25 μ lのメタノールに溶解させた評価サンプルを滅菌済みペーパーディスクに浸透させ、検定平板上にのせて26°Cにて1~2日間培養し、阻止円径を測定した。結果は表3に示した通りである。

表3：抗真菌活性評価試験結果（阻止円径測定値 単位mm）

化合物記号	サンプル量(μg)			
	0.025	0.05	0.125	0.25
UK-2A	19	22	26	26
Antimycin	12	14	16	18
例8	14	18	20	24
例17	16	19	24	27
例4	0	12	16	17
例39	8	8	11	12
例42	8	12	16	17
例49	8	8	12	14
例18	10	12	14	18
例21	15	19	22	25
例23	14	17	22	24
例28	11	13	15	18
例30	8	10	15	18
例33	12	16	21	24
例34	12	15	20	23
例35	12	17	22	26
例36	12	13	18	19
例53	12	15	18	20
例56	0	11	15	19

試験例2：植物病防除効果試験（イネいもち病防除効果試験）

培養土を入れたプラスチック製ポットに6本ずつ育苗した3葉期のイネ苗（品種：十石）を供試し、所定量の供試化合物をアセトンに溶解後、Tween20と水を加えることにより、アセトン10%、Tween20 0.05%を含む薬剤を調製した。

この薬剤を3ポット当たり10mLずつスプレーガンを用いて散布した。薬剤を風乾した後、あらかじめオートミール寒天培地で培養したイネいもち病菌(*Pyricularia oryzae*)の分生胞子懸濁液を均一に噴霧して接種し、25°Cの温室内に24時間保った。その後、夜間18°C、日中25°Cの人工気象室内に移して発病させ、接種7日後に接種葉に現れた病斑数を計数調査し、処理区のイネ苗一本あたりの平均病斑数を求め、下記の式によって防除価を算出した。

結果は表4に示した通りである。

$$\text{防除価} = (1 - \text{処理区の平均病斑数} / \text{無処理区の病斑数}) \times 100$$

表4：イネいもち病防除効果試験結果

化合物記号	濃度 (ppm)	防除価
無散布	-	0
ラブサイドゾル	100	100
Antimycin A	100	83
例4	100	86
例38	100	83
例5	100	90
例8	100	100
例39	100	98
例41	100	86

現在イネいもち病予防薬として広く使われているラブサイドゾルや優れた抗真菌剤として知られるアンチマイシン Aに比較して、本発明による新規化合物を同濃度で散布した場合、同等もしくはそれ以上の有効性を示した。なお、薬害は認められなかった。

試験例3：植物病防除効果試験（炭疽病防除効果試験）

培養土を入れたプラスチック製ポットで育苗した第1本葉展開期のキュウリ苗（品種：四葉）を供試し、試験例2と同様にして調製した薬剤を3ポット当たり5 mLずつスプレーガンを用いて散布した。薬剤を風乾した後、あらかじめ馬鈴薯煎汁寒天培地で培養したキュウリ炭疽病菌 (*Colletotrichum lagenarium*) の分生胞子懸濁液を均一に噴霧して接種し、24時間26°Cの湿室条件下に保って感染させた。その後、夜間18°C、日中25°Cの人工気象室内に移して発病させ、接種7日後に葉面の発病を病斑面積率で0（発病なし）～5（葉面積の75%以上が発病）の発病指数を用いて観察し、下記の式によって発病度及び防除価を算出した。

結果は表5に示した通りである。

$$\text{発病度} = \Sigma (\text{程度別発病数} \times \text{指数}) / (5 \times \text{調査葉数}) \times 100$$

$$\text{防除価} = (1 - \text{処理区の発病度} / \text{無処理区の病斑数}) \times 100$$

表5：炭疽病防除効果試験結果

化合物記号	濃度 (ppm)	防除価
無散布	—	0
Antimycin A	200	17
例8	200	100
例41	200	100
例46	200	100

強い抗真菌活性を有していることが知られるアンチマイシンAと比較して、本発明による新規化合物は同濃度で明らかな優位性を示した。なお、薬害は認められなかった。

二

試験例4：植物病防除効果試験（キュウリベと病防除効果試験）

培養土を詰めたプラスチック製ポットで育苗した第1本葉展開期のキュウリ苗（品種：四葉）を供試し、試験例2と同様にして調製した薬剤を3ポット当たり5mLずつスプレーガンを用いて散布した。薬剤を風乾した後、あらかじめキュウリベと病（病原菌：Pseudoperonopora cubensis）に罹病したキュウリ葉裏の病斑部を搔きとて作った分生胞子懸濁液を均一に噴霧して接種し、24時間20°Cの温室条件下に保って感染させた。その後、夜間18°C、日中22°Cの人工気象室内に移して発病させ、接種7日後に葉面の発病を病斑面積率で0（発病なし）～5（葉面積の75%以上が発病）の発病指数を用いて観察し、下記の式によって発病度及び防除価を算出した。結果は表6に示した通りである。

$$\text{発病度} = \Sigma (\text{程度別発病数} \times \text{指數}) / (5 \times \text{調査葉数}) \times 100$$

$$\text{防除価} = (1 - \text{処理区の発病度} / \text{無処理区の病斑数}) \times 100$$

表6：キュウリベと病防除効果試験結果

化合物記号	濃度 (ppm)	防除価
無散布	—	0
ダコニール	50	78
例4	200	78
例5	200	100
例40	200	100
例41	200	88
例52	200	100

本発明による新規化合物は200ppmの濃度でも薬害はなく、高い防除価を示した。

試験例 5 植物病防除効果試験（キュウリ炭疽病防除効果の残効確認試験）

培養土を入れたプラスチック製ポットで育苗した第1本葉展開期のキュウリ苗（品種：四葉）を供試し、試験例2と同様にして調製した薬剤を3ポット当たり5mLずつスプレーガンを用いて散布した。薬剤を風乾して、当日あるいは24時間後、あらかじめ馬鈴薯煎汁寒天培地で培養したキュウリ炭疽病菌 (*Colletotrichum lagenarium*) の分生胞子懸濁液を均一に噴霧した。

キュウリ炭疽病防除効果の残効性を比較する目的で、下記の3つの条件（試験区）を設定し、試験例3に記載の方法と同じ方法により発病度及び防除価を算出した。結果は表7に示した通りである。

試験区：

試験区1：散布当日接種区：風乾当日に接種を行い、24時間26°Cの温室条件下に置いた後、夜間18°C、日中25°Cの人工気象器内に7日間置いた。

試験区2：蛍光灯下保持、翌日接種区：風乾後室内蛍光灯下の人工気象器（夜間18°C、日中25°C、日中8時間蛍光灯点灯）内に置いた後散布24時間後に接種を行い、24時間26°Cの温室条件下に置いた後、夜間18°C、日中25°Cの人工気象器内に7日間置いた。

試験区3：日光下保持、翌日接種区：風乾後日中（8時間）野外で日光下に置いた後は18°Cの人工気象室に置き、散布24時間後接種を行い、24時間、26°Cの温室条件下に置いた後、夜間18°C、日中25°Cの人工気象室に7日間置いた。

表7：キュウリ炭疽病防除効果残効性試験結果

化合物記号	濃度 (ppm)	防除価		
		試験区1	試験区2	試験区3
UK-2A	10	80	93	27
	30	100	100	60
例18	10	67	93	60
	30	67	93	80
	100	87	93	93

試験区1と試験区2との比較において大きな有意差は認められなかったが、実用化の際、最も問題となる日光下での残効性は例18の方が明らかに優れていることを示している。

試験例6 光安定性試験 (HPLC残存率)

農薬での使用を考慮し、太陽光曝露による光安定性データを取得するため下記の方法にて試験を実施した。

実施日時

第1回：1997年5月26日12時から17時までの5時間

第2回：1997年5月28日10時から16時までの6時間

実施場所：両日とも神奈川県小田原市

天候：両日とも快晴

試料調製法：UK-2Aおよび例18の化合物各25mgをアセトン5mLに溶解し、各々直徑約9cmのシャーレに張った。アセトンは程なく蒸発して、試料はそれぞれ白色の薄膜状になる。これを太陽光に曝露した。

太陽光曝露終了後に、UK-2A及び例18の化合物の残存率をHPLC (カラム：Y

MC-PACK ODS-A S-5 6.0×150mm (A-312))、移動相：アセトニトリル-水=70:30 (v/v)、検出波長：254nm)にて定量した。その結果は表8に示す通りである。

表8：UK-2A及び例18の化合物の太陽光曝露後の残存率 (%)

	UK-2A	例18
第1回試験	33	98
第2回試験	64	93

UK-2Aは3'位水酸基をO-アセチル化することにより、光安定性が大幅に改善されることが立証された。この事実は上記の試験例5におけるキュウリ炭疽病防除効果残効性試験の結果を裏付けるものである。

試験例7 光安定性試験（イネいもち病防除効果）

畑苗代 (1m×1m) で露地栽培した3葉期のイネ苗（品種：コシヒカリ）を夜間のみビニールトンネルで覆いイネいもち病に罹病した稲穂を釣り下げ (高さ40cm)、イネ苗にイネいもち病を感染させた。初発感染を確認した後、噴霧器にて試験例2に記載の方法に準じて薬剤濃度を変えて調製した200ppm濃度の薬剤溶液を1m²あたり100mL散布した。散布後一週間、夜間はビニールトンネルで覆い感染を促した。薬剤散布後19日後に葉の病斑面積を計測調査し、下記式によって防除価を算出した。結果は表9に示した通りである。

$$\text{防除価} = (1 - \text{処理区の平均病斑面積} / \text{無処理区の病斑面積}) \times 100$$

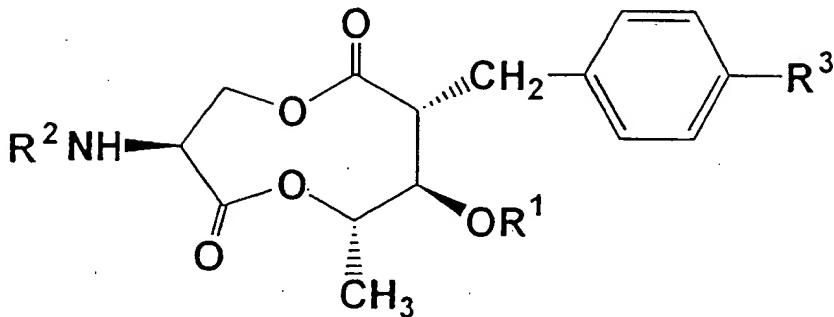
表9：イネいもち病防除試験結果

化合物番号	濃度 (ppm)	防除価
無散布	—	0
UK-2A	200	63
例18	200	95

試験例6の太陽光暴露による残存率にほぼ相関した結果が得られた。即ち、植物を用いたイネいもち病防除試験においても3'位水酸基のO-アセチル化によりUK-2Aは、光安定性が大幅に改善していることが立証された。

請求の範囲

1. 下記の式(I)で表される化合物またはその塩:



(I)

[式中、

R¹はイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基、または2-メチルブタノイル基を表し、

R²は水素原子、芳香族カルボン酸残基またはアミノ保護基を表し、

R³は水素原子、ニトロ基、アミノ基、アシルアミノ基またはN、N-ジアルキルアミノ基を表す(但し、R¹がイソブチリル基、チグロイル基、イソバレリル基または2-メチルブタノイル基であって、R³が水素原子であるとき、R²は3-ヒドロキシピコリン酸残基、3-ヒドロキシ-4-メトキシピコリン酸残基または3、4-ジメトキシピコリン酸残基である場合を除く)]

2. R²が表す芳香族カルボン酸残基が、置換基を有する安息香酸残基、置換基を有するニコチン酸残基、置換基を有するキノリンカルボン酸残基、置換基を有するピリミジンカルボン酸残基、置換基を有するキノキサリンカルボン酸残基の群から選択されるものである、請求項1に記載の化合物またはその塩。

3. R²が表す芳香族カルボン酸残基が、ヒドロキシ安息香酸残基、ピコリ

ン酸残基、ヒドロキシ置換基を有するニコチン酸残基、キノリンカルボン酸残基、ヒドロキシ置換基を有するピリミジンカルボン酸残基、ヒドロキシ置換基を有するキノキサリンカルボン酸残基の群から選択されるものである、請求項1に記載の化合物またはその塩。

4. R^2 が表す芳香族カルボン酸残基が、ピコリン酸残基であって、
ヒドロキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルコキシ基、ベンジルオキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンゾイルオキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルコキシカルボニルオキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルキルオキシカルボニル C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンジルオキシカルボニル C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、カルボキシ C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、ジ(C_{1-6})アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、およびジフェニルホスホリルオキシ基からなる群から選択される一または二以上の置換基で置換されたピコリン酸残である、請求項1に記載の化合物またはその塩。

5. R^2 が表す芳香族カルボン酸残基が、ピコリン酸残基であって、
 C_{1-6} アルコキシ基で置換され、
ヒドロキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンゾイルオキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルコキシカルボニルオキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルキルオキシカルボニル C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンジルオキシカルボニル C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、カルボキシ C_{1-10} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、ジ(C_{1-6})アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、またはジフェニルホスホリルオキシ基で置換されたからなる群から選択される一または二以上の置換基で置換されたピコリン酸残である、請求項1に記載の化合物またはその塩。

6. R^2 が表す芳香族カルボン酸残基が、ピコリン酸残基であって、
その4位が C_{1-6} アルコキシ基で置換されており、
その3位がヒドロキシ基、 C_{1-6} アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンゾイルオ

キシ基、C₁₋₆アルコキシカルボニルオキシ基、C₁₋₆アルキルオキシカルボニルC₁₋₁₀アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、ベンジルオキシカルボニルC₁₋₁₀アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、カルボキシC₁₋₁₀アルキルカルボニルオキシ基、C₁₋₆アルキルホスホリ~~ュ~~オキシ基、ジ(C₁₋₆)アルキルホスホリルオキシ基、またはジフェニルホスホリルオキシ基で置換されている

請求項1に記載の化合物またはその塩。

7. C₁₋₆アルコキシ基がメトキシ基である、請求項6に記載の化合物または塩。

8. R³が水素原子である、請求項2～7に記載の化合物またはその塩。

9. R³が表すアシルアミノ基がC₁₋₆アシルアミノ基またはR³が表すN, N-ジアルキルアミノ基がN, N-ジ(C₁₋₄)アルキルアミノ基である、請求項1～7に記載の化合物またはその塩。

10. R³が表すアシルアミノ基がホルミルアミノ基またはR³が表すN, N-ジアルキルアミノ基がN, N-ジメチルアミノ基である、請求項1～7に記載の化合物またはその塩。

11. 真菌の発生および繁殖を予防駆除するために用いられる、請求項1～10のいずれか一項に記載の化合物またはその塩の使用。

12. 請求項1～10のいずれか一項に記載の化合物またはその塩を使用することを含んでなる、真菌の発生および繁殖を予防駆除する方法。

13. 請求項1～10のいずれか一項に記載の化合物またはその塩をヒトを含む動物に投与することを含んでなる、真菌感染症の治療方法。

14. 請求項1～10のいずれか一項に記載の化合物またはその塩を農園芸植物に施すことを含んでなる、真菌感染症の治療方法。

15. 請求項1～10のいずれか一項に記載の化合物またはその塩を産業製品および産業製品の製造過程において施すことを含んでなる、真菌の発生および

繁殖を予防駆除する方法。

16. 請求項1～10のいずれか一項に記載の化合物またはその塩を含んでなる、抗真菌剤。

17. 請求項1～10のいずれか一項に記載の化合物またはその塩と、薬学上許容される担体とを含んでなる、抗真菌剤。

18. 薬学上許容される添加剤を更に含んでなる、請求項17に記載の抗真菌剤。

19. R^1 が式中で定義された基であり、 R^2 および R^3 がそれぞれ水素原子である式(I)の化合物の製造法であって、

化合物UK-2をクロル化剤によってクロル化すること、

アルコールによってエーテル化すること、そして、

水を用いて加水分解することを含んでなる、製造法。

[特許手続上の微生物の寄託の国際的承認
に関するブダペスト条約]

下記国際寄託当局によって規則 7. 1 に従い
発行される。

原寄託についての受託証

氏名（名称） サントリー株式会社
寄託者 代表取締役 鳥井 信一郎 殿
あて名 〒
大阪府大阪市北区堂島浜2丁目1番40号

BUDAPEST TREATY ON THE INTERNATIONAL RECOGNITION OF THE DEPOSIT OF MICROORGANISMS FOR THE PURPOSES OF PATENT PROCEDURE

RECEIPT IN THE CASE OF AN ORIGINAL DEPOSIT

issued pursuant to Rule 7.1 by the INTERNATIONAL DEPOSITORY AUTHORITY identified at the bottom of this page.

1. 微生物の表示	
(寄託者が付した識別のための表示) Streptoverticillium sp. SAM2084	(受託番号) FERM BP- 6446
2. 科学的性質及び分類学上の位置	
1 植の微生物には、次の事項を記載した文書が添付されていた。 ■ 科学的性質 ■ 分類学上の位置	
3. 受領及び受託	
本国際寄託当局は、平成 6 年 2 月 17 日（原寄託日）に受領した1植の微生物を受託する。	
4. 移管請求の受領	
本国際寄託当局は、平成 6 年 2 月 17 日（原寄託日）に1植の微生物を受領した。 そして、平成 10 年 8 月 3 日に原寄託よりブダペスト条約に基づく寄託への移管請求を受領した。 (平成 6 年 2 月 17 日に寄託された微工研菌番第 P- 14154 号より移管)	
5. 国際寄託当局	
<p>通商産業省工業技術院生命工学工業技術研究所</p> <p>名称： National Institute of Bioscience and Human-Technology Agency of Natural Resources and Environmental Science and Technology</p> <p>所長 大曾 信一 Dr. Shin-ichi Ochiai Director-General</p> <p>あて名： 日本国茨城県つくば市東1丁目1番3号（郵便番号305-8566） 1-3, Higashimachi 1-chome Tsukuba-shi Ibaraki-ken 305-8566. JAPAN</p>	

平成 10 年 (1998) 8 月 3 日

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP99/00541

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

Int.Cl⁶ C07D321/00, 405/12, A61K31/335, A61K31/44, A61K31/505

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

Int.Cl⁶ C07D321/00, 405/00-12, A61K31/00-505

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)
CAPLUS (STN), REGISTRY (STN), WPID (STN)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A Y	JP, 7-233165, A (SUNTORY LTD), 5 September, 1995 (05. 09. 95) (Family: none)	1-19 1-12, 15-18
PX PY	SHIMANO, M.; KAMEI, N.; SHIBATA, T.; INOGUCHI, K.; ITOH, N.; IKARI, T.; SENDA, H. Total Synthesis of Antifungal Dilactones UK-2A and UK-3A: The Determination of their Relative and Absolute Configurations, Analog Synthesis and Antifungal Activities. Tetrahedron, Vol. 54, No. 42, p.12745-12774 (October 1998)	1, 2, 11, 12, 1-12, 15-18
A	JP, 44-235, B (KYOWA FERMENTATION INDUSTRY CO., LTD), 8 January, 1969 (08. 01. 69) (Family: none)	1-12, 15-19
A	JP, 7-196489, A (KOBE STEEL LTD), 1 August, 1969 (01. 08. 69) (Family: none)	1-12, 15-19

 Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. See patent family annex.

A	Special categories of cited documents: document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
E	earlier document but published on or after the international filing date	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
L	document which may throw doubt on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
O	document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"&" document member of the same patent family
P	document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search
22 April, 1999 (22. 04. 99)Date of mailing of the international search report
11 May, 1999 (11. 05. 99)Name and mailing address of the ISA/
Japanese Patent Office

Authorized officer

Facsimile No.

Telephone No.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP99/00541

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. Claims Nos.: 13, 14

because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
They involve methods for treatment of the human body by therapy.

2. Claims Nos.:

because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

3. Claims Nos.:

because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.

No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

A. 発明の属する分野の分類 (国際特許分類 (IPC))
Int.Cl. 6 C07D321/00, 405/12, A61K31/335, A61K31/44, A61K31/505

B. 調査を行った分野

調査を行った最小限資料 (国際特許分類 (IPC))
Int.Cl. 6 C07D321/00, 405/00-12, A61K31/00-505

最小限資料以外の資料で調査を行った分野に含まれるもの

国際調査で使用した電子データベース (データベースの名称、調査に使用した用語)
CAPLUS(STN), REGISTRY(STN), WPID(STN)

C. 関連すると認められる文献

引用文献の カテゴリー*	引用文献名 及び一部の箇所が関連するときは、その関連する箇所の表示	関連する 請求の範囲の番号
A Y	JP, 7-233165, A(SUNTORY LTD) 5.9月. 1995(05.09.95) ファミリーなし	1-19 1-12, 15-18
PX PY	SHIMANO, M. ; KAMEI, N. ; SHIBATA, T. ; INOGUCHI, K. ; ITOH, N. ; IKARI, T. ; SENDA, H. Total Synthesis of Antifungal Dilactones UK-2A and UK-3A: The Determination of their Relative and Absolute Configurations, Analog Synthesis and Antifungal Activities. Tetrahedron, Vol. 54, No. 42, p. 12745-12774(October 1998)	1, 2, 11, 12, 1-12, 15-18

C欄の続きにも文献が列挙されている。

パテントファミリーに関する別紙を参照。

* 引用文献のカテゴリー

- 「A」特に関連のある文献ではなく、一般的技術水準を示すもの
- 「E」国際出願日前の出願または特許であるが、国際出願日以後に公表されたもの
- 「L」優先権主張に疑義を提起する文献又は他の文献の発行日若しくは他の特別な理由を確立するために引用する文献（理由を付す）
- 「O」口頭による開示、使用、展示等に言及する文献
- 「P」国際出願日前で、かつ優先権の主張の基礎となる出願

の日の後に公表された文献

- 「T」国際出願日又は優先日後に公表された文献であって出願と矛盾するものではなく、発明の原理又は理論の理解のために引用するもの
- 「X」特に関連のある文献であって、当該文献のみで発明の新規性又は進歩性がないと考えられるもの
- 「Y」特に関連のある文献であって、当該文献と他の1以上の文献との、当業者にどって自明である組合せによって進歩性がないと考えられるもの
- 「&」同一パテントファミリー文献

国際調査を完了した日

22. 04. 99

国際調査報告の発送日

11.05.99

国際調査機関の名称及びあて先

日本国特許庁 (ISA/JP)

郵便番号 100-8915

東京都千代田区霞が関三丁目4番3号

特許庁審査官 (権限のある職員)

齊藤 恵

4P 9164

電話番号 03-3581-1101 内線 6608

C(続き) 関連すると認められる文献		
引用文献の カテゴリー*	引用文献名 及び一部の箇所が関連するときは、その関連する箇所の表示	関連する 請求の範囲の番号
A	JP, 44-235, B(KYOWA FERMENTATION INDUSTRY CO., LTD) 8.1月. 1969(08.01.69) ファミリーなし	1-12, 15-19
A	JP, 7-196489, A(KOBE STEEL LTD) 1.8月. 1969(01.08.69) ファミリーなし	1-12, 15-19

第Ⅰ欄 請求の範囲の一部の調査ができないときの意見（第1ページの2の続き）

法第8条第3項（PCT第17条(2)(a)）の規定により、この国際調査報告は次の理由により請求の範囲の一部について作成しなかった。

1. 請求の範囲 13, 14 は、この国際調査機関が調査をすることを要しない対象に係るものである。つまり、
人の身体の治療による処置方法を含んでいる。

2. 請求の範囲 _____ は、有意義な国際調査をすることができる程度まで所定の要件を満たしていない国際出願の部分に係るものである。つまり、

3. 請求の範囲 _____ は、従属請求の範囲であってPCT規則6.4(a)の第2文及び第3文の規定に従って記載されていない。

第Ⅱ欄 発明の単一性が欠如しているときの意見（第1ページの3の続き）

次に述べるようにこの国際出願に二以上の発明があるとこの国際調査機関は認めた。

1. 出願人が必要な追加調査手数料をすべて期間内に納付したので、この国際調査報告は、すべての調査可能な請求の範囲について作成した。
2. 追加調査手数料を要求するまでもなく、すべての調査可能な請求の範囲について調査することができたので、追加調査手数料の納付を求めなかった。
3. 出願人が必要な追加調査手数料を一部のみしか期間内に納付しなかったので、この国際調査報告は、手数料の納付のあった次の請求の範囲のみについて作成した。
4. 出願人が必要な追加調査手数料を期間内に納付しなかったので、この国際調査報告は、請求の範囲の最初に記載されている発明に係る次の請求の範囲について作成した。

追加調査手数料の異議の申立てに関する注意

- 追加調査手数料の納付と共に出願人から異議申立てがあった。
 追加調査手数料の納付と共に出願人から異議申立てがなかった。

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/06465

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

IPC (6): A61K 31/395, 31/40, 31/41, 31/42, 31/44, 31/47, 31/55, 31/405; 31/415, 31/445; C07D 205/02, 209/08, 209/18, 401/14, 403/14, 498/16, 513/16

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

US CL : 514/210, 212, 304, 307, 318, 320, 321, 322, 323, 337, 338, 339, 361, 375, 379, 397, 398, 399, 413, 414, 415; 540/596, 602, 603; 546/125, 133, 146, 193, 198, 199, 210, 270, 271, 273; 548/127, 217, 241, 256, 304.7, 305.1, 306.1, 306.4, 465, 950

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched

Classification System: U.S.

514/210, 212, 304, 307, 318, 320, 321, 322, 323, 337, 338, 339, 361, 375, 379, 397, 398, 399, 413, 414, 415; 540/596, 602, 603; 546/125, 133, 146, 193, 198, 199, 210, 270, 271, 273; 548/127, 217, 241, 256, 304.7, 305.1, 306.1, 306.4, 465, 950



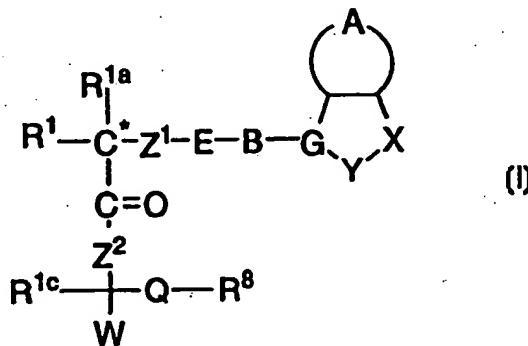
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : A61K 31/395, 31/40, 31/41, 31/42, 31/44, 31/47, 31/55, 31/405, 31/415, 31/445, C07D 205/02, 209/08, 209/18, 401/14, 403/14, 498/16, 513/16		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/44921 (43) International Publication Date: 15 October 1998 (15.10.98)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US98/06465		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CU, CZ, EE, GE, GW, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KG, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, US, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 2 April 1998 (02.04.98)		Published	
(30) Priority Data: 60/042,633 4 April 1997 (04.04.97) US 60/064,381 6 November 1997 (06.11.97) US		With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.	
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): MERCK & CO., INC. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).			
(72) Inventors; and			
(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): YANG, Lihu [CN/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). PATCHETT, Arthur, A. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). PASTERNAK, Alexander [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). BERK, Scott [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).			
(74) Common Representative: MERCK & CO., INC.; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).			

(54) Title: SOMATOSTATIN AGONISTS

(57) Abstract

This invention relates to somatostatin agonist compounds which are potent with high selectivity toward the receptor subtype 2. Compounds of formula (I) including pharmaceutically acceptable salts and hydrates thereof are disclosed. These compounds are useful in the treatment of diabetes, cancer, acromegaly, restenosis, depression, irritable bowel syndrome, pain and diabetic retinopathy. Many of the compounds are also orally active.



FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR.	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LJ	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

TITLE OF THE INVENTION
SOMATOSTATIN AGONISTS

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

5 Somatostatin (SST) is a widely distributed peptide occurring in two forms SST-14 (with 14 amino acids) and SST-28 (with 28 amino acids). SST has multiple functions including modulation of secretion of growth hormone, insulin, glucagon, pancreatic enzymes and gastric acid, in addition to having potent anti-proliferative effects.

10 The mechanism of action of somatostatin is mediated via high affinity membrane associated receptors. Five somatostatin receptors (SSTR1-5) are known (Reisine, T.; Bell, G.I. *Endocrine Reviews* 1995, 16, 427-442). All five receptors are heterogeneously distributed and pharmacologically distinct. Structure-function studies 15 with a large number of peptidal analogs have shown that the Trp-Lys dipeptide of somatostatin is important for high-affinity binding. The availability of these receptors now makes it possible to design selectively active ligands for the sub-types to determine their physiological functions and to guide potential clinical applications. For example, 20 studies utilizing subtype selective peptides have provided evidence that somatostatin subtype 2 receptors (SSTR2) mediates the inhibition of growth hormone release from the anterior pituitary and glucagon release from the pancreas, whereas SSTR5 selective agonists inhibit insulin release. These results imply the usefulness of SSTR2 selective 25 analogs in the treatment of diabetes and many of the compounds of this invention have that selectivity.

In addition, the novel compounds described herein are useful in the therapy of a variety of conditions which include acromegaly, retinal neovascularization, neuropathic and visceral pain, 30 irritable bowel syndrome, chronic atrophic gastritis, Crohn's disease, rheumatoid arthritis and sarcoidosis. The instant compounds inhibit cell proliferation and cause the regression of certain tumors including breast cancer and pancreatic cancer. They are useful in preventing restenosis after angioplasty, they prevent non-steroid antiinflammatory 35 drug (NSAID) induced ulcers, they are useful in treating colitis and to

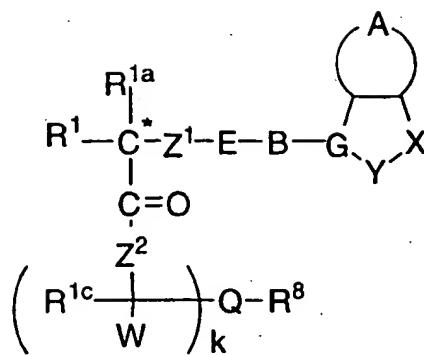
inhibit cystoid macular edema. Their central activities include promotion of REM sleep and an increase in cognitive function. They also have analgesic activities and can be used, for example, to treat cancer pain, cluster headache and post operative pain and they are useful in the prevention and treatment of migraine attacks and depression. The compounds described herein may be used in combination with other therapies, for example, with rapamycin to treat cancers, restenosis and atherosclerosis and with angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors and insulin in the treatment of diabetes. The compounds of this invention are also remarkably reduced in size in comparison with the natural hormone and its peptide analogs such as octreotide and seglitide, which allows ease of formulation. Many of the instant compounds show activity following oral administration.

This invention relates to compounds which are agonists of somatostatin and selective toward somatostatin receptor subtype SSTR2. The compounds have a number of clinical uses including in the treatment and prevention of diabetes, cancer, acromegaly, depression, chronic atrophic gastritis, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, retinopathy, arthritis, pain both viseral and neuropathic and to prevent restenosis. Many of the compounds are orally active. Thus, it is an object of this invention to describe such compounds. It is a further object to describe the specific preferred stereoisomers of the somatostatin agonists. A still further object is to describe processes for the preparation of such compounds. Another object is to describe methods and compositions which use the compounds as the active ingredient thereof. Further objects will become apparent from reading the following description.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to compounds represented by formula I:

3



as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts and hydrates thereof,
wherein:

- 5 R^1 is selected from the group consisting of: C₁-10alkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁-6alkyl)-, C₃-7cycloalkyl(C₁-6alkyl)-, C₁-5alkyl-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, aryl(C₀-5 alkyl)-K-(C₁-5alkyl)-, and C₃-7cycloalkyl(C₀-5alkyl)-K-(C₁-5alkyl)-,
wherein K is -O-, -S(O)_m-, -N(R²)C(O)-, -C(O)N(R²)-, -CR²=CR²-.
 - 10 or -C≡C-,
the alkyl portions of which being optionally substituted with by 1 to 5 halogen groups, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} groups or C(O)OR^{2a},
 - 15 and wherein aryl is selected from the group consisting of: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindolyl, pyridyl, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, thiazolyl and benzimidazolyl, said aryl groups being unsubstituted or substituted with 1 to 3 C₁-6 alkyl or halo groups, 1 to 2 -OR² groups, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 -CF₃ groups, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²),
20 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;
- R^2 is selected from the group consisting of: H, C₁-8alkyl, -(CH₂)_taryl and C₃-7cycloalkyl, and where two R² groups are present, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-C₈ ring, optionally interrupted by

O, S or NR^{3a}, in which R^{3a} is H or C₁₋₆alkyl optionally substituted by OH;

t is an integer from 0 to 3;

5

and when R² is other than H, R² is optionally substituted with 1 to 5 halogen groups, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} groups or C(O)OR^{2a},

10

R^{2a} is H or C₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by OH;

m is 0, 1 or 2;

R^{1a} is H or C₁₋₃alkyl;

15

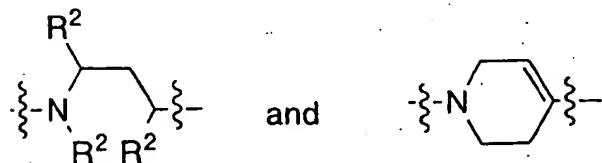
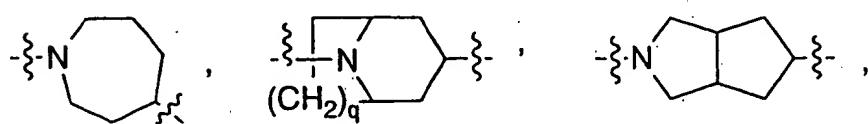
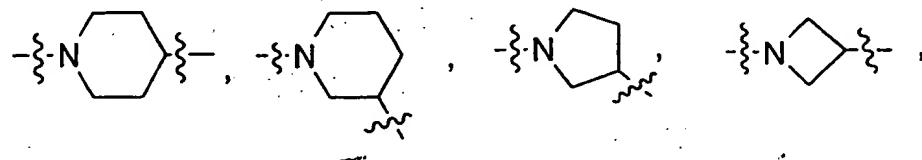
Z¹ is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂- and -NR^{2a};

E is selected from the group consisting of -SO₂-, -C(O)-, -CO(C(R²)₂)_n-, -C(=N-CN)-, -C(=N-NO₂)- and -C(=N-SO₂N(R²)₂)-;

20

n is an integer from 0 to 3;

B is selected from the group consisting of:



5

where attachment points are indicated by lines $\{\}$ and q is 0, 1, 2 or 3, said group being optionally substituted by C₁₋₆alkyl, and the R² and (CH₂)_q groups are optionally substituted as described above;



- 5 represents an aromatic or non-aromatic 5-6 membered ring structure wherein:

- G is N, CH or C;
- 10 Y is -C(O)-, -SO₂-, -C(OR¹¹)=, -C(SR¹¹)=, -C(NR¹¹)=, =N-, -N(R¹¹)-, =NC(O)- or -C(R¹¹)₂-;
- and
- 15 X is -N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-, -O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;
- 20 R¹¹ is H, C₁₋₈alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)₂-heteraryl, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁₋₄alkyl, -(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂ or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR², wherein heteraryl is selected from tetrazolyl, oxadiazolyl, imidazolyl and triazolyl, said heteraryl being optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and where p is 0-3;



- 25 A is a 5-10 membered fused aryl or heteroaryl group having 1-4 heteroatoms selected from O, S and N, or a 5-10 membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group having 1-3 heteroatoms selected from O, S and N, said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group being optionally substituted with 1-3 C₁₋₆alkyl or halo groups, -OR², N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl,

6

-N(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂ or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

Z² is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂-, -CHR^{2b}- and -NR^{2b}-,

5 wherein R^{2b} is selected from the group consisting of: H, C₁₋₈alkyl, -(CH₂)_t-aryl, -(CH₂)_nCO₂R², -(CH₂)_nCON(R²)₂ and -(CH₂)_nOR², and when Z² is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to R^{1c}, Q or W to form a C₅₋₈ ring, which is optionally interrupted by O, S(O)_m or NR^{2a};

10 R^{1c} is selected from the group consisting of: H, -(CH₂)_qSR², -(CH₂)_qOR² and C₁₋₈alkyl;

15 W is selected from the group consisting of: H, C₁₋₈alkyl, (CH₂)_t-aryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qOR², -(CH₂)_qOC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)(CH₂)_taryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qOC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qS(O)_mR² and -(CH₂)_t-heteroaryl, the heteroaryl portion of which is selected from:

20 tetrazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl and pyrazinyl, optionally substituted with R², N(R²)₂ or OR²,

and when R² is other than H, said R², (CH₂)_q and the (CH₂)_t portions of W are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁₋₄alkyl, OR^{2a}, C(O)OR^{2a} or 1-3 halo groups, and

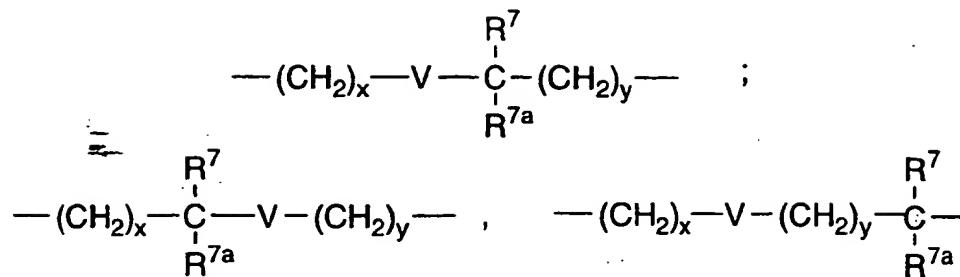
25 the aryl portions of W are optionally substituted with 1 to 3 halo groups, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁₋₄alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

k is 0 or 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to Z²;

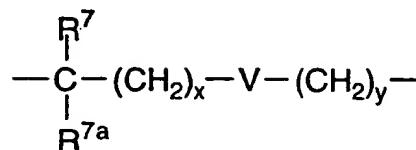
30 Q represents a member selected from the group consisting of:

—(CH₂)_x—V—(CH₂)_y—;

7



and



where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6;

5

V is an aromatic 6-12 membered mono- or bicyclic ring system or a non-aromatic 3-12 membered mono- or bicyclic ring system, optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R² groups, 1 to 3 halo groups, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², -C₁₋₄alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

10

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently CF₃ or R²;

R⁸ is selected from the group consisting of H,

15

-NR⁴R⁵, -C(=NR⁹)N(R¹⁰)₂ and -N⁺(R⁴)₃;

R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of: R², -C(=NR²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NCN)N(R²)₂, -C(=NC(O)R²)N(R²)₂, C(=NSO₂R²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NNO₂)NR², heteroaryl, -C(O)N(R²)₂,

-C(=S)N(R²)₂, -C(O)R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl and

20 -(CH₂)_tcyclopropyl, or

R⁴ and R⁵ are taken together and represent

-(CH₂)_d-La(CH₂)_e-

8

wherein L_a is $-C(R^2)_2-$, $-O-$, $-S(O)_m-$ or $-N(R^2)-$, and d and e are independently 0 to 3 such that d plus e equals 2-6,

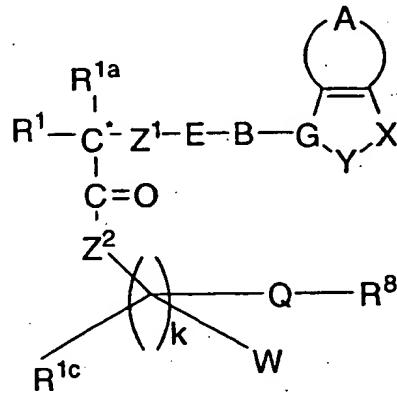
- and said heteroaryl and R^2 other than H being optionally substituted with 1-3 C₁₋₆alkyl groups, 1-7 halo groups, $N(R^2)_2$, OR^2 ,
- 5 $N(R^2)C(O)R^2$, $C(O)N(R^2)$, $OC(O)R^2$, $S(O)_mR^2$, CF_3 , OCF_3 , NO_2 ,
 $N(R^2)C(O)(R^2)$, $N(R^2)C(O)N(R^2)_2$, $C(O)OR^2$, $C(O)N(R^2)_2$, $SO_2N(R^2)_2$,
 $N(R^2)SO_2R^2$ or methylenedioxy;

- 10 and R^9 and R^{10} are independently H or C₁₋₈alkyl or may be taken together and represent a C₅₋₈ ring, optionally substituted by 1-5 halo groups, OR^2 or $S(O)_mR^2$.

Pharmaceutical compositions and methods of treatment are also included.

15 **DETAIL DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

The compounds and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts and hydrates of the present invention are represented by structural formula I':



20

Formula I'

wherein:

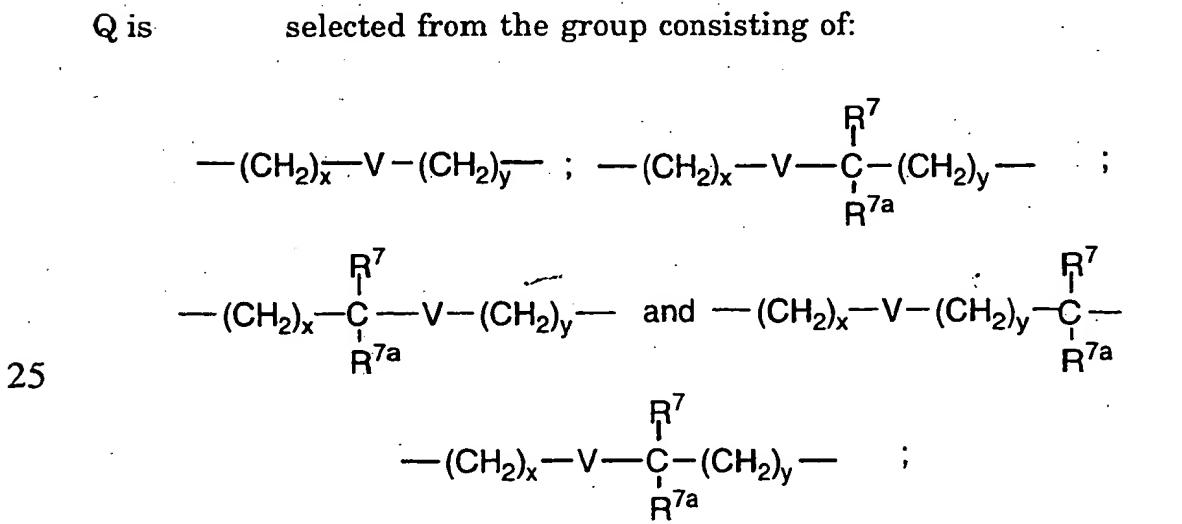
- 25 R^1 is selected from the group consisting of: C_{1-C10} alkyl, aryl, aryl (C_{1-C6} alkyl), (C_{3-C7} cycloalkyl)(C_{1-C6} alkyl)-, (C_{1-C5} alkyl)-K-(C_{1-C5} alkyl)-, aryl(C_{0-C5} alkyl)-K-(C_{1-C5} alkyl)-, and (C_{3-C7} cycloalkyl)(C_{0-C5} alkyl)-K-(C_{1-C5} alkyl)-, where K is $-O-$, $-S(O)_m-$, $-N(R^2)C(O)-$, $-C(O)N(R^2)-$, $-CR^2=CR^2-$, or -

g

- 5 C₁C-, where R² and alkyl may be further substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} or C(O)OR^{2a}, and aryl is selected from: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindole, pyridyl, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, thiazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and where the aryl is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent selected from: 1 to 3 of C₁-C₆ alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;
- 10 R² is selected from: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, and C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl, and where two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups are present on one atom, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-C₈ cyclicring, optionally including oxygen, sulfur or NR^{3a}, where R^{3a} is hydrogen, or C₁-C₆ alkyl, optionally substituted by hydroxyl; Aryl is defined in the body of the case.
- 15 R^{1a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C₁-C₃ alkyl;
- 20 R^{2a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₃ alkyl, said alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxyl;
- 25 R^{2b} is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_nCO₂R², -(CH₂)_nCON(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_nOH, (CH₂)_nCF₃, (CH₂)_t heteroaryl or -(CH₂)_nOR²;
- 30 R^{1c} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, -(CH₂)_qSR², -(CH₂)_qOR² and C₁-C₈ alkyl;
- Z¹ is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂- and -NR^{2a};

10

- 5 Z² is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂-, -CHR^{2b}- and -NR^{2b}, when Z² is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to R^{1c}, Q and/or W to form a C5-8 cyclic ring, which can optionally be interrupted by oxygen, S(O)_m or NR^{2a};
- 10 W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qOR², -(CH₂)_qOC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)(CH₂)_taryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qOC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qS(O)_mR², and (CH₂)_t heteroaryl where the heteroaryl is preferably tetrazole, oxadiazole, thiadiazole, triazole or pyrazine, which is optionally substituted with R², N(R²)₂ and OR², where R², (CH₂)_q and (CH₂)_t are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁-C₄ alkyl, OR², C(O)OR², 1-3 halo and said aryl is optionally substituted with 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;
- 15 Q is selected from the group consisting of:
- 20



25

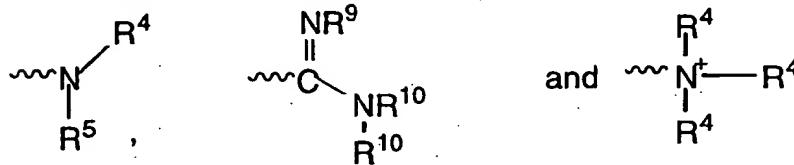
where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6;

//

V is a C₃-12 nonaromatic cyclic or bicyclic ring or an aromatic such as benzene, naphthalene; said aromatic or non aromatic ring can be optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R², 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl; and in the case where diastereo- or regio- isomers are present, all are included;

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R²;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of



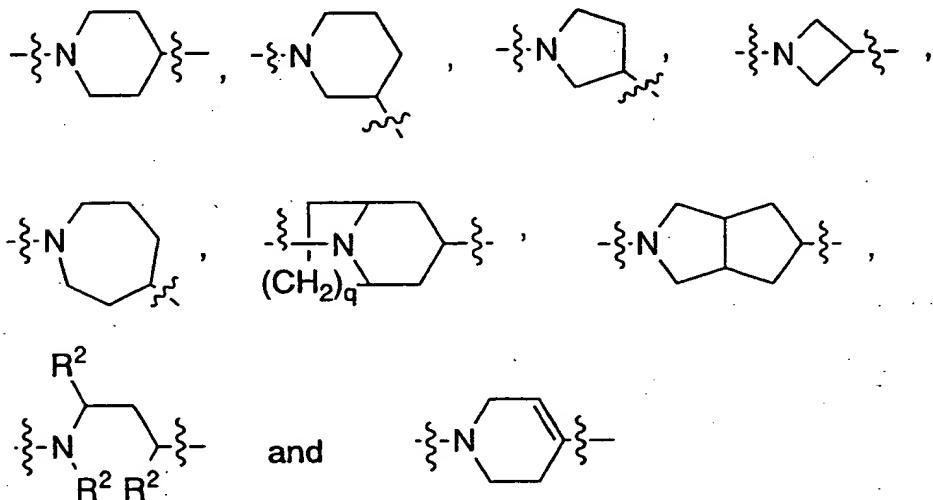
R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of R², -C(=NR²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NCN)N(R²)₂, -C(=NC(O)R²)N(R²)₂, C(=NSO₂R²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NNO₂)NR², heteroaryl, (CH₂)_nCO₂R², -C(=O)N(R²)₂, -C(=S)N(R²)₂, -C(=O)R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, (CH₂)_t cyclopropyl, or R⁴ and R⁵ may be taken together to form -(CH₂)_d-La-(CH₂)_e- where La is -C(R²)₂- or -O-, -S(O)_m- or -N(R²)-, d and e are independently 1 to 3, said heteroaryl and R² optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-6 alkyl, 1-7 halo, N(R²)₂, OR², N(R²)C(O)R², C(O)N(R²), OC(O)R², S(O)_mR², CF₃, OCF₃, NO₂, N(R²)C(O)(R²), N(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, C(O)OR², C(O)N(R²)₂, SO₂N(R²)₂, N(R²)SO₂R², or methylenedioxyl; and the heteroaryl is pyridyl, imidazolyl, pyrimidinyl, thiazolyl or pyrazinyl;

E is selected from the group consisting of -SO₂-, -CO(C(R²)₂)_n-, -C(=N-CN)-, -C(=N-NO₂)- and -C(=N-SO₂N(R²)₂)-;

/2

R^9 & R^{10} are independently H, C₁-8 alkyl or may be taken together to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring, which can optionally be substituted by 1-5 halogen, OR² or S(O)_mR²;

5 B is selected from the group consisting of a noncyclic, heterocyclic or heterobicyclic ring selected from the group consisting of



10

where attachment points are indicated by lines $(\{\})$ external to the rings and to the open ring which are optionally substituted by C₁-C₆ alkyl and where R² and (CH₂)_q are described above;

15 G is N, CH or C=;

Y is -C(O)-, -SO₂-, -C(OR¹¹)=, -C(SR¹¹)=, -C(NR¹¹)=, =N-, N(R¹¹)-, =NC(O)-, or -C(R¹¹)₂-;

20 X is -N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-, -O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;

R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂, (CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R²,

13

(CH₂)₂ heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -
(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is
tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are
optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and
where p is 0-3;

5 A is a fused aryl or heteroaryl group 1-4 atoms of which are
 heteroatoms of N, O and/or S; cycloalkyl; or heterocycloalkyl
10 group, 1-3 atoms of which are heteroatoms N, O and/or S,
 said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group
 containing from 5 to 10 atoms and being optionally
 substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR²,
 N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -
 N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -
15 SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -
 N(R²)SO₂R², and in the case where regioisomers are
 present, all are included;

20 k is an integer from 0 to 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to
 Z²;

25 m is an integer from 0 to 2;

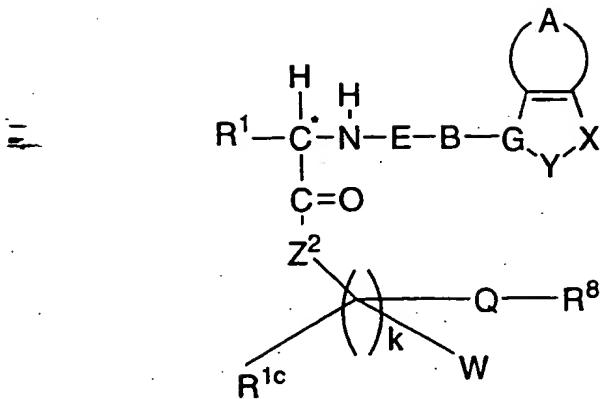
 n is an integer from 0 to 3;

 q is an integer from 0 to 3; and

 t is an integer from 0 to 3.

30 Preferred compounds of the instant invention include those
 of Formula Ib:

14



Formula Ib

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts and hydrates thereof,

5 wherein:

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of: C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, aryl, aryl (C₁-C₆ alkyl), (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, aryl(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, and (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, where K is -O-, -S(O)_m-, -N(R²)C(O)-, -C(O)N(R²)-, -CR²=CR²-, or -C≡C-, where R² and alkyl may be further substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} or C(O)OR^{2a}, and aryl is selected from: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindole, pyridyl, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, thiazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and where the aryl is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent selected from: 1 to 3 of C₁-C₆ alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²)-, -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

R² is selected from: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, and C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl, and where two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups are present on one atom, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-C₈ cyclic ring, optionally including oxygen, sulfur or NR^{3a},

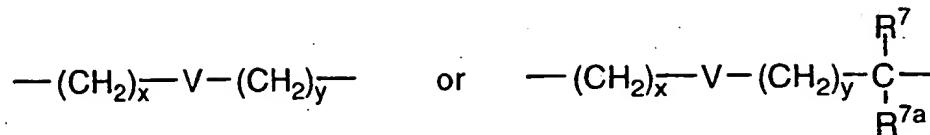
/ 5

where R^{3a} is hydrogen, or C₁-C₆ alkyl, optionally substituted by hydroxyl;

- 5 R^{2a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₃ alkyl, said alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxyl;
- 10 Z² is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂-, -CHR^{2b}- and -NR^{2b}, when Z² is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to R^{1c}, Q and/or W to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring, which can optionally be interrupted by oxygen, S(O)_m or NR^{2a};
- 15 R^{2b} is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_nCO₂R², -(CH₂)_nCON(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_nOH, (CH₂)_nCF₃, (CH₂)_t heteroaryl or -(CH₂)_nOR²;
- 20 R^{1c} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C₁-C₈ alkyl;
- 25 W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qOR², -(CH₂)_qOC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)(CH₂)_taryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qOC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qS(O)_mR², and (CH₂)_t heteroaryl where the heteroaryl is preferably tetrazole, oxadiazole, thiadiazole, triazole or pyrazine, which is optionally substituted with R², N(R²)₂ and OR², where R², (CH₂)_q and (CH₂)_t are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁-C₄ alkyl, OR², C(O)OR², 1-3 halo and said aryl is optionally substituted with 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

16

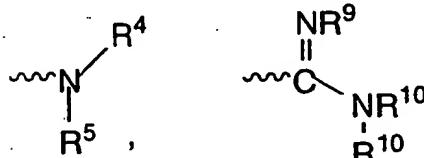
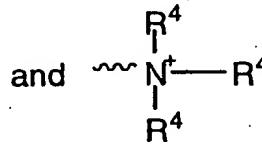
Q is



5 where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4;

V is a C₃-8 nonaromatic cyclic or bicyclic ring consisting of, cyclopropane, cyclobutane, cyclopentane, cyclohexane, cycloheptane, cyclooctane; or an aromatic such as benzene, 10 napthalene; said aromatic or non aromatic ring can be optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R², 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, or where Q and R₈ can be linked to form a C₃-8 cyclic ring; and in the case where diastereo- or 15 regio- isomers are present, all are included;

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R²;

R₈ is selected from the group consisting of

 and 

20 R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of R², -C(=NR²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NCN)N(R²)₂, -C(=NC(O)R²)N(R²)₂, C(=NSO₂R²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NNO₂)NR², heteroaryl, (CH₂)_nCO₂R² -C(=O)N(R²)₂, -C(=S)N(R²)₂, -C(=O)R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, (CH₂)_t cyclopropyl, or 25 R⁴ and R⁵ may be taken together to form -(CH₂)_d-L_a(CH₂)_e where L_a is -C(R²)₂- , -O-, -S(O)_m- or -N(R²)-, d and e are

independently 1 to 3, said heteroaryl and R² optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-6 alkyl, 1-7 halo, N(R²)₂, OR², N(R²)C(O)R², C(O)N(R²), OC(O)R², S(O)_mR², CF₃, OCF₃, NO₂, N(R²)C(O)(R²), N(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, C(O)OR², C(O)N(R²)₂, SO₂N(R²)₂, N(R²)SO₂R², or methylenedioxy; and the heteroaryl is pyridyl, imidazolyl, pyrimidinyl, thiazolyl or pyrazinyl;

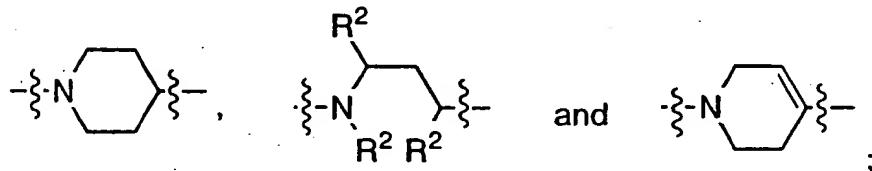
5

E is selected from the group consisting of -SO₂-, -CO(C(R²)₂)_n-, -C(=N-CN)-, -C(=N-NO₂)- and -C(=N-SO₂N(R²)₂)-;

10 R⁹ & R¹⁰ are independently H, C₁-8 alkyl or may be taken together to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring, which can optionally be substituted by 1-5 halogen, OR² or S(O)_mR²;

15

B is selected from the group consisting of a noncyclic or heterocyclic selected from the group consisting of



20

where attachment points are indicated by lines ({}) external to the rings and to the open ring which are optionally substituted by C₁-C₆ alkyl and where R² and (CH₂)_q are described above;

25

G is N, CH or C=;

Y is -C(O)-, -SO₂-, -C(OR¹¹)=, -C(SR¹¹)=, -C(NR¹¹)=, =N-, N(R¹¹)-, =NC(O)-, or -C(R¹¹)₂-;

30 X is

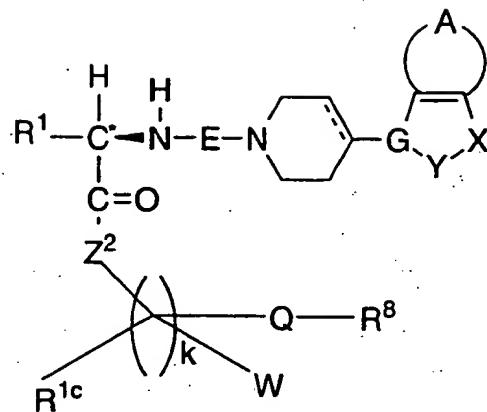
-N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-, -O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;

/ 8

- R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂,
5 (CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², (CH₂)₂
heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -
(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is
tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are
optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and
where p is 0-3;
- 10 A is a fused aryl or heteroaryl group 1-4 atoms of which are
heteroatoms of N, O and/or S; cycloalkyl; or heterocycloalkyl
group, 1-3 atoms of which are heteroatoms N, O and/or S,
said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group
containing from 5 to 10 atoms and being optionally
15 substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR²,
N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -
N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -
SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or
N(R²)SO₂R², and in the case where regioisomers are
20 present, all are included;
- k is an integer from 0 to 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to
Z²;
- 25 m is an integer from 0 to 2;
- n is an integer from 0 to 3;
- q is an integer from 0 to 3; and
- 30 t is an integer from 0 to 3.

Even more preferred compounds of the instant invention
include those of Formula Ic:

19



Formula Ic

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts and hydrates thereof,
5 wherein:

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of: C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, aryl, aryl (C₁-C₆ alkyl), (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₅ alkyl)-O-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, and aryl(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-O-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, where R² and alkyl may be further substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} or C(O)OR^{2a}, and aryl is selected from: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindole, pyridyl, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, thiazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and where the aryl is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent selected from: 1 to 3 of C₁-C₆ alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

R² is selected from: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, and C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl, and where two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups are present on one atom, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-C₈ cyclic ring, optionally including oxygen, sulfur or NR^{3a},

20

where R^{3a} is hydrogen, or C₁-C₆ alkyl, optionally substituted by hydroxyl;

R^{2a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₃ alkyl, said alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxyl;

Z² is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂-, -CHR^{2b}- and -NR^{2b}, when Z² is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to R^{1c}, Q and/or W to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring;

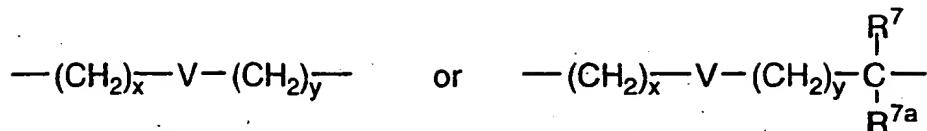
R^{2b} is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_nCO₂R², -(CH₂)_nCON(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_nOH, (CH₂)_nCF₃, (CH₂)_t heteroaryl or -(CH₂)_nOR²;

R^{1c} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₈ alkyl;

W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qOR², -(CH₂)_qOC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)(CH₂)_taryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qOC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qS(O)_mR², and (CH₂)_theteroaryl where the heteroaryl is preferably tetrazole, oxadiazole, thiadiazole, triazole or pyrazine, which is optionally substituted with R², N(R²)₂ and OR², where R², (CH₂)_q and (CH₂)_t are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁-C₄ alkyl, OR², C(O)OR², 1-3 halo and said aryl is optionally substituted with 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

Q is

21



where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3;

Vis



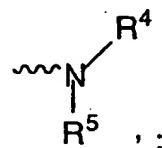
5

said the aromatic or non aromatic ring can be optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R², 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, and in the case where diastereo- or regio- isomers are present, all are included;

10

R^7 and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R^2 ;

R8 is



15

R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, (CH₂)_t cyclopropyl or (CH₂)_nCO₂R²;

20 E is selected from the group consisting of $\text{-SO}_2\text{-}$, -CO- , $\text{-C(=N-}\text{CN)\text{-}}$, $\text{-C(=N-NO}_2\text{\text{-})}$ and $\text{-C(=N-SO}_2\text{NH}_2\text{\text{-})}$;

R⁹ & R¹⁰ are independently H or C₁₋₈ alkyl;

25 G is N, CH or C=;

Y is -C(O)-, -SO₂-, -C(OR¹¹)=, -C(SR¹¹)=, -C(NR¹¹)=, =N-, N(R¹¹)-, =NC(O)-, or -C(R¹¹)₂;

22

X is -N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-,
-O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;

R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂,
(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², (CH₂)₂
heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -
(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is
tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are
optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and

where p is 0-3;

A is a fused aryl or heteroaryl group 1-4 atoms of which are
heteroatoms of N, O and/or S; cycloalkyl; or heterocycloalkyl
group, 1-3 atoms of which are heteroatomseteroatoms N, O
and/or S, said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or
heterocycloalkyl group containing from 5 to 10 atoms and
being optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆
alkyl, halogen, -OR², N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -
CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -
1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl,
N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -N(R²)SO₂R², and in the case where
regioisomers are present, all are included;

k is an integer from 0 to 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to
Z2;

m is an integer from 0 to 2;

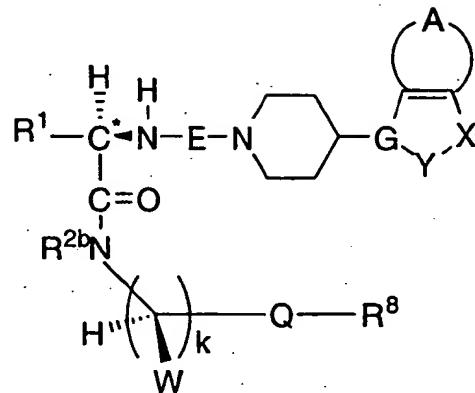
n is an integer from 0 to 3;

30

q is an integer from 0 to 3, and

t is an integer from 0 to 3.

Still more preferred compounds of the instant invention include those of Formula Id:

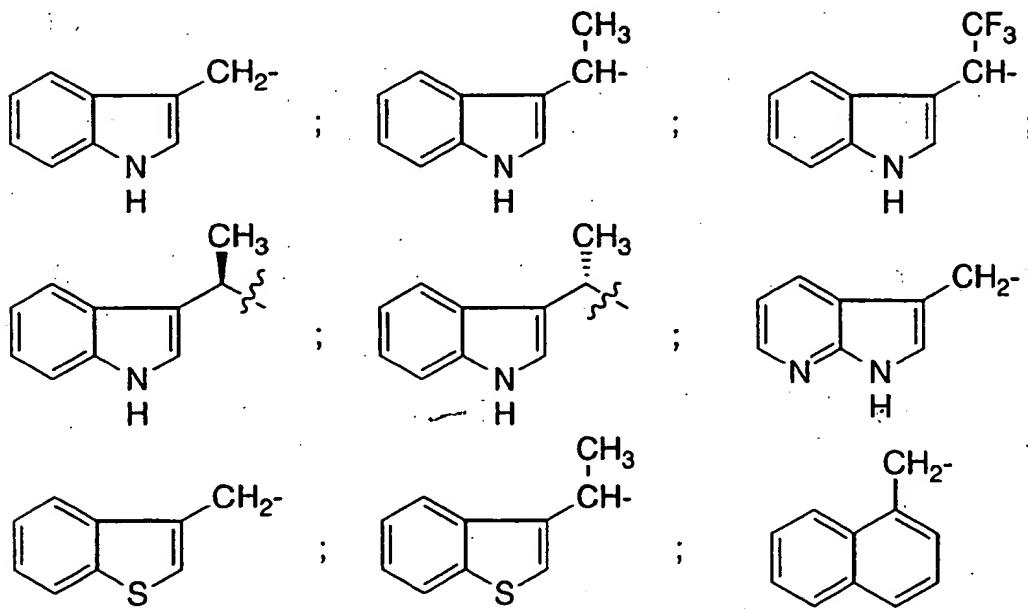


Formula Id

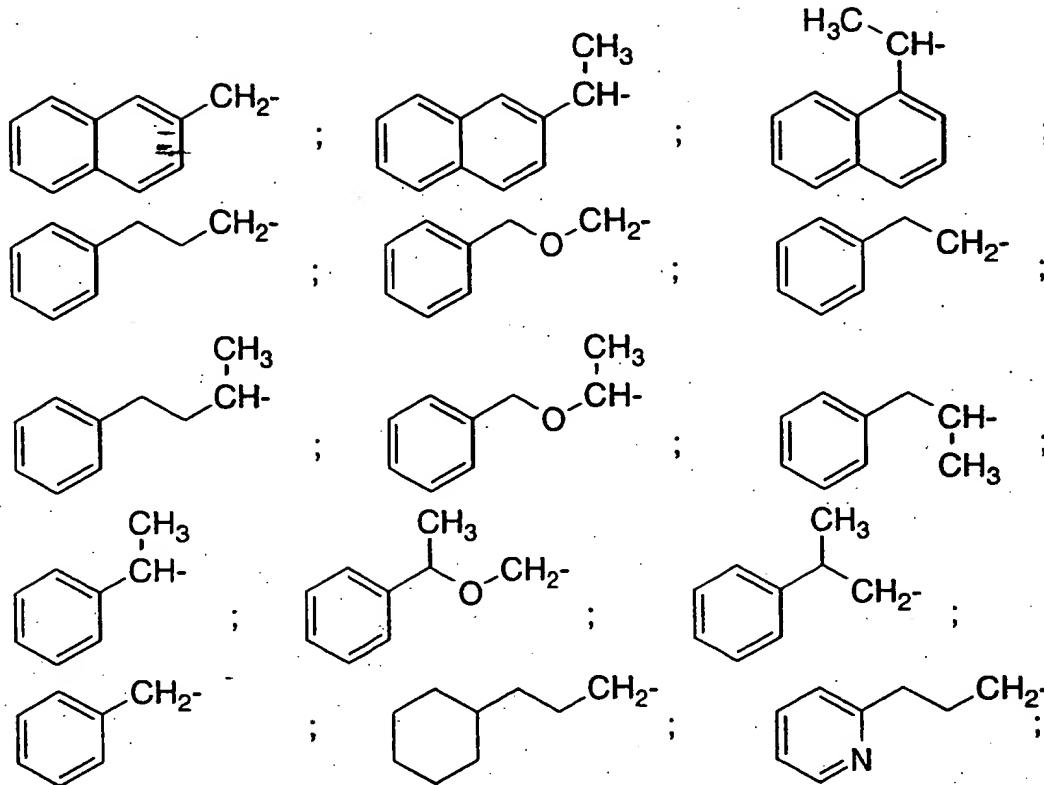
5

as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts and hydrates thereof, wherein:

- 10 R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:

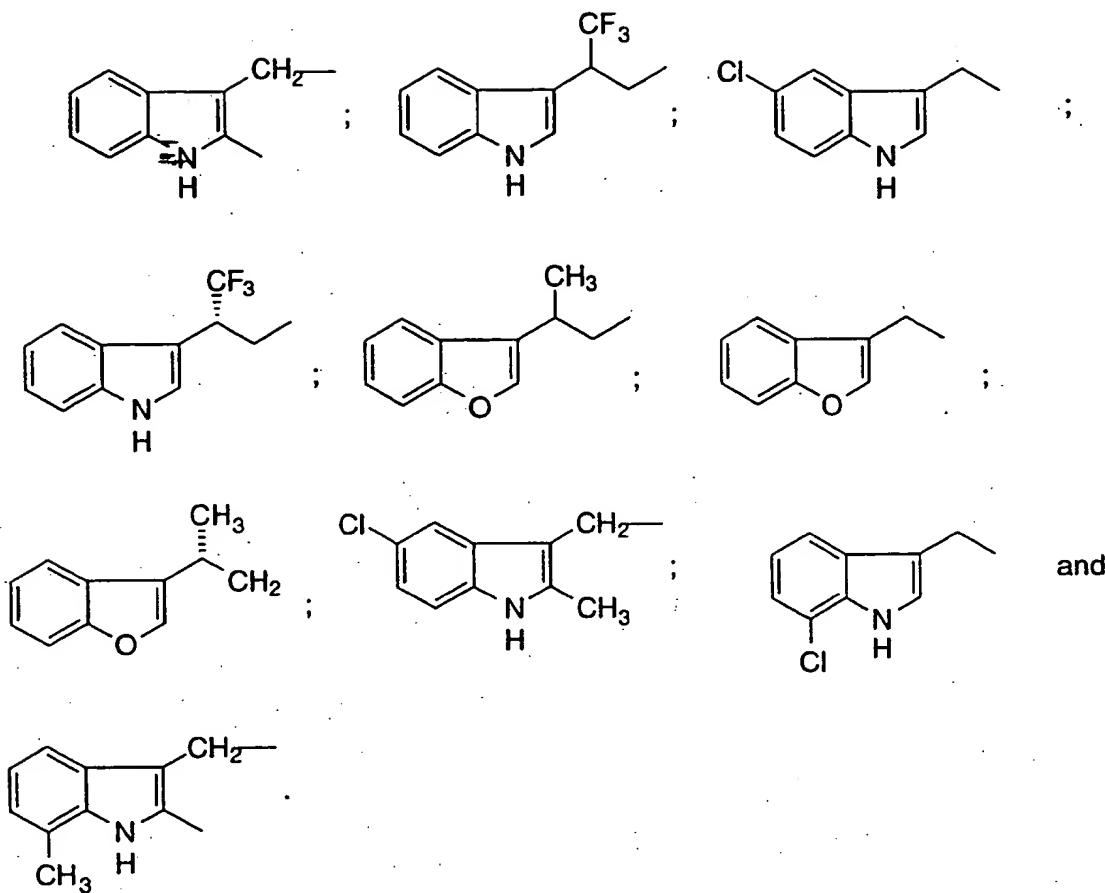


24



5

25

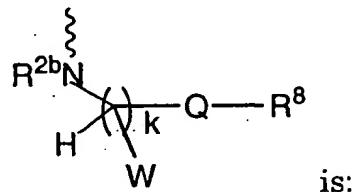


where the aryl or heteroaryl moiety is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent selected from: 1 to 3 of C1-C6 alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -

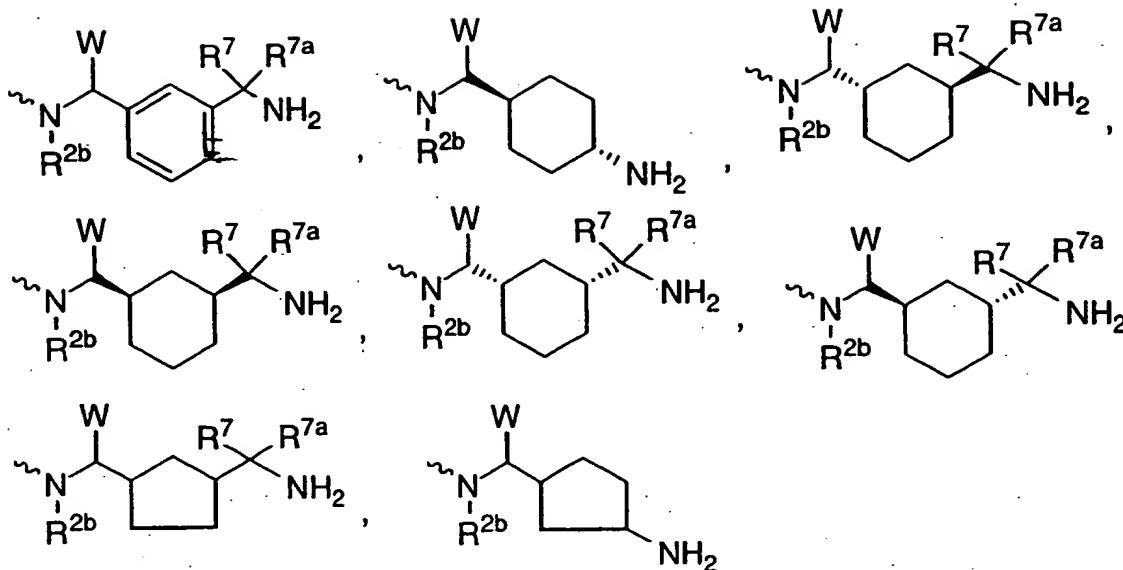
- 5 N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

R^2 is selected from: hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, t-butyl;

10



24



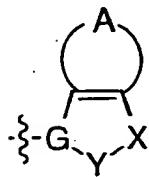
and the phenyl or cycloalkyl groups can be optionally substituted with 1
5 to 2 R², 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -
S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, or CF₃; and in the case where diastereo- or regio-
isomers are present, all are included;

10 W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₄
alkyl or (CH₂)_qC(O)OR²;

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R²;

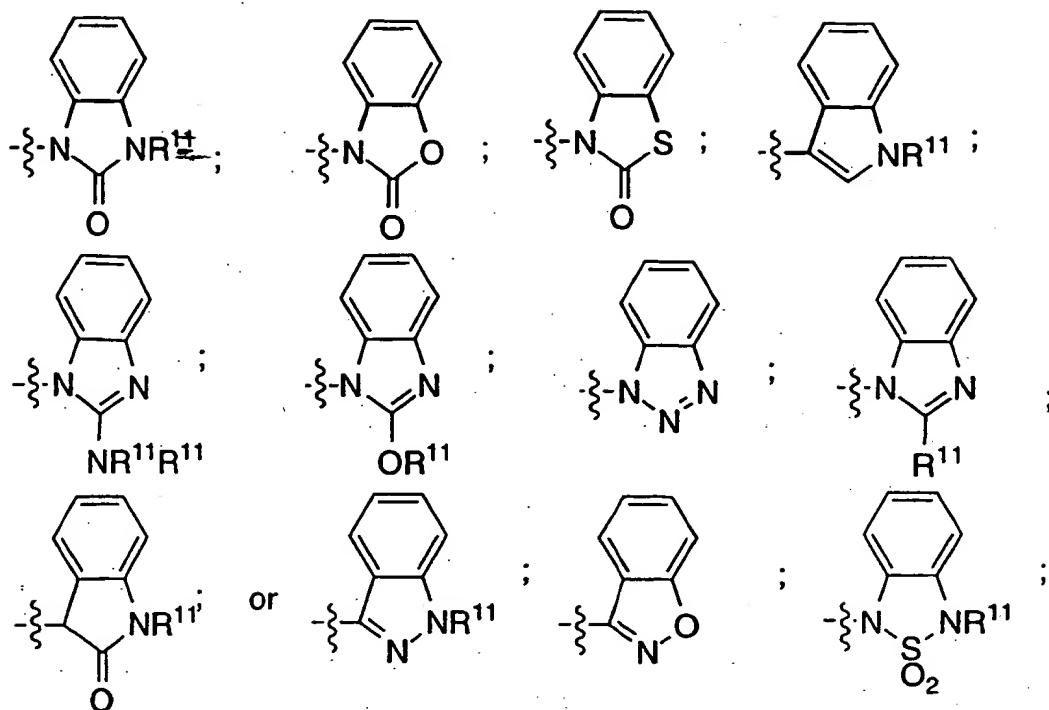
15 R^{2b} is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₄ alkyl, (CH₂)_nCF₃ or (CH₂)_t
heteroaryl;

E is selected from the group consisting of -CO-, -C(=N-CN)-, and
-SO₂;



is a member selected from the group consisting of:

27



5 where the aromatic can be optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR², N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

10 R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂, (CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², (CH₂)_p heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and where p is 0-3;

15 20 m is an integer from 0 to 2;

n is an integer from 0 to 3; and

28

q is an integer from 0 to 3.

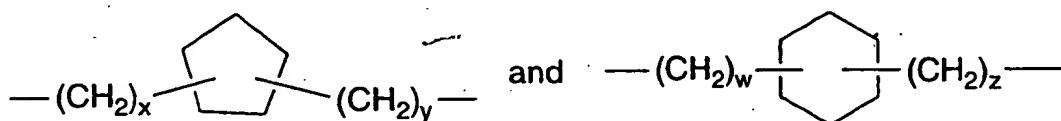
Also included in the invention is a pharmaceutical composition which is comprised of a compound of formula I in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

The invention also includes a method of treating diabetes, cancer, acromegaly chronic atrophic gastritis, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, retinopathy, arthritis, viseral and neuropathic pain and to prevent restenosis, which comprises administering to a person or animal a compound of formula I in an amount which is effective for treating said disease or condition.

The invention is described herein in detail using the terms defined below unless otherwise specified.

The term "alkyl" refers to a monovalent alkane (hydrocarbon) derived radical containing from 1 to 15 carbon atoms unless otherwise defined and if two carbon atoms or more they may include a double or a triple bond. It may be straight, branched or cyclic. Preferred straight or branched alkyl groups include methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl and t-butyl. Preferred cycloalkyl groups include cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl.

Alkyl also includes a straight or branched alkyl group which contains or is interrupted by a cycloalkylene portion. Examples include the following:



wherein: x plus y = from 0-10 and w plus z = from 0-9.

The alkylene and monovalent alkyl portion(s) of the alkyl group can be attached at any available point of attachment to the cycloalkylene portion.

When substituted alkyl is present, this refers to a straight, branched or cyclic alkyl group as defined above, substituted with 1-3 groups as defined with respect to each variable.

5 The term "alkenyl" refers to a hydrocarbon radical straight, branched or cyclic containing from 2 to 15 carbon atoms and at least one carbon to carbon double bond. Preferred alkenyl groups include ethenyl, propenyl, butenyl and cyclohexenyl. As described above with respect to alkyl, the straight, branched or cyclic portion of the alkenyl group may contain double bonds and may be substituted when a substituted alkenyl group is provided.

10 The term "alkynyl" refers to a hydrocarbon radical straight, branched or cyclic, containing from 2 to 15 carbon atoms and at least one carbon to carbon triple bond. Up to three carbon-carbon triple bonds may be present. Preferred alkynyl groups include ethynyl, propynyl and butynyl. As described above with respect to alkyl, the straight, branched or cyclic portion of the alkynyl group may contain triple bonds and may be substituted when a substituted alkynyl group is provided.

15 The term "alkoxy" refers to those groups of the designated length in either a straight or branched configuration and if two or more carbon atoms in length, they may include a double or a triple bond. Exemplary of such alkoxy groups are methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, tertiary butoxy, pentoxy, isopent oxy, hexoxy, isohexoxy allyloxy, propargyloxy, and the like.

20 25 The term "halogen" is intended to include the halogen atom fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

Aryl refers to aromatic rings e.g., phenyl, substituted phenyl and like groups as well as rings which are fused, e.g., naphthyl, indaryl, biphenyl and the like. Aryl thus contains at least one ring having at least 6 atoms, with up to two such rings being present, containing up to 10 atoms therein, with alternating (resonating) double bonds between adjacent carbon atoms. The preferred aryl groups are phenyl and naphthyl. Aryl groups may likewise be substituted with from 1 to 3 groups of C₁-C₁₅ alkyl, halogen, -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl or -N(R²)SO₂R².

Preferred substituted aryls include phenyl and naphthyl substituted with one or two groups.

The term "heteroaryl" refers to a monocyclic aromatic hydrocarbon group having 5 or 6 ring atoms, or a bicyclic aromatic group having 8 to 10 atoms, containing at least one heteroatom, O, S or N, in which a carbon or nitrogen atom is the point of attachment, and in which one additional carbon atom is optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O or S, and in which from 1 to 3 additional carbon atoms are optionally replaced by nitrogen heteroatoms. The heteroaryl group is 10 optionally substituted with up to three groups selected from 1 to 3 of C₁-C₈ alkyl, halogen, -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, N(R²)₂, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl or -N(R²)SO₂R².

Heteroaryl thus includes aromatic and partially aromatic groups which contain one or more heteroatoms. Examples of this type are thiophene, oxadiazole, imidazopyridine, pyridine, oxazole, thiazole, pyrazole, tetrazole, imidazole, pyrimidine, pyrazine, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, indolyl, azaindole, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl and triazine.

The terms "heterocycloalkyl" and "heterocyclyl" refer to a cycloalkyl group (nonaromatic) in which one of the carbon atoms in the ring is replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, SO, SO₂ or N, and in which up to three additional carbon atoms may be optionally replaced by heteroatoms.

Heterocyclyl is carbon or nitrogen linked; if carbon linked and contains a nitrogen, then the nitrogen may be substituted by R². Examples of heterocyclyls are piperidinyl, morpholinyl, pyrrolidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydroimidazo[4,5-c]pyridinyl, imidazolinyl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidin-2-onyl, piperidin-2-onyl and the like.

Certain of the above defined terms may occur more than once in the above formula and upon such occurrence each term shall be defined independently of the other.

Salts encompassed within the term "pharmaceutically acceptable salts" refer to non-toxic salts of the compounds of this invention which are generally prepared by reacting the free base with a

suitable organic or inorganic acid. Representative salts include the following:

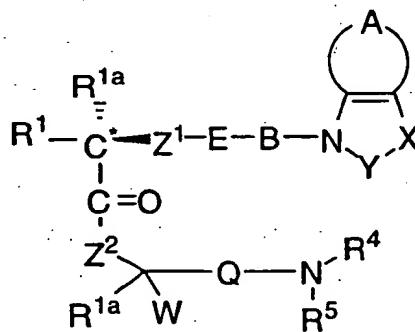
- Acetate, Benzenesulfonate, Benzoate, Bicarbonate,
Bisulfate, Bitartrate, Borate, Camsylate, Carbonate, Citrate,
5 Dihydrochloride, Edeitate, Edisylate, Estolate, Esylate, Fumarate,
Gluconate, Glutamate, Hydrobromide, Hydrochloride,
Hydroxynaphthoate, Lactate, Lactobionate, Laurate, Malate, Maleate
, Mandelate, Mesylate, Mucate, Napsylate, Nitrate, N-methylglucamine
ammonium salt, Oleate, Oxalate, Pamoate (Embonate), Palmitate,
10 Pantothenate, Phosphate/diphosphate, Polygalacturonate, Salicylate,
Stearate, Sulfate, Subacetate, Succinate, Tannate, Tartrate, Tosylate,
and Valerate.

- The compounds of the present invention may contain one or
more asymmetric carbon atoms and may exist in racemic and optically
15 active forms. All of these compounds are contemplated to be within the
scope of the present invention. Therefore, where a compound is chiral,
the separate enantiomers, substantially free of the other, are included
within the scope of the invention; further included are all mixtures of
the two enantiomers. Also included within the scope of the invention are
20 polymorphs and hydrates of the compounds of the instant invention.

- Asymmetric centers may be present in the compounds of
the instant invention depending upon the nature of the various
substituents on the molecule. Each such asymmetric center will
independently produce two optical isomers and it is intended that all of
25 the possible optical isomers and diastereomers in mixture and as pure
or partially purified compounds are included within the ambit of this
invention. In the case of the asymmetric carbon atom represented by an
asterisk in Formula I, it has been found that compounds are more active
as somatostatin agonists and, therefore preferred, in which the nitrogen
30 substituent is above and the R^{1a} is below the plane of the structure as
represented in Formula II. An equivalent representation places R¹ and
the N-substituent in the plane of the structure with the C=O group
above. This configuration corresponds to that present in a D-amino acid.
In most cases, this is also designated an R-configuration, although this
35 will vary according to the value of R¹ used in making R- or S-

32

stereochemical assignments. In addition, configurations of some of the most preferred compounds of this invention are indicated. When the carbon atom in Formula I bearing an asterisk is of a defined and usually a D- configuration, up to two times more diastereomers result with each 5 additional stereo centers are present. These diastereomers are arbitrarily referred to as diastereomer 1 (d₁) and diastereomer 2 (d₂) and so on as so forth in this invention and, if desired, their independent syntheses or chromatographic separations may be achieved as described herein. Their absolute stereochemistry may be determined by the x-ray 10 crystallography of crystalline products or crystalline intermediates which are derivatized, if necessary, with a reagent containing an asymmetric center of known absolute configuration.



Formula II

15

The term "pharmacologically effective amount" shall mean that amount of a drug or pharmaceutical agent that will elicit the biological or medical response of a tissue, system, animal or human that is being sought by a researcher or clinician.

20

The term "substituted" shall be deemed to include multiple degrees of substitution by a named substituent.

25

Where multiple substituent moieties are disclosed or claimed, the substituted compound can be independently substituted by one or more of the disclosed or claimed substituent moieties, singly or plurally.

The ability of the compounds of the present invention to act as somatostatin agonists makes them useful as pharmacologic agents

for mammals, especially for humans, for the treatment and prevention of disorders wherein somatostatin itself or the hormones it regulates may be involved. Examples of such disorders include diabetes,
5 acromegaly restenosis, arthritis and cancer. The instant compounds can also be used in combination with other therapeutic agents.
Illustrated for diabetes, examples of these compounds include metformin or other biguanides, acarbose, sulfonylureas thiazolidinediones or other insulin sensitizers including, but not limited to, compounds which function as agonists on peroxisome proliferator-
10 activated receptor gamma (PPAR-gamma), insulin, insulin-like-growth factor I, glucagon-like peptide I (glp-I) and available satiety-promoting agents such as dexfenfluramine or leptin.

The compounds of the present invention can be administered in such oral dosage forms as tablets, capsules (each 15 including timed release and sustained release formulations), pills, powders, granules, elixers, tinctures, suspensions, syrups and emulsions. Likewise, they may also be administered in intravenous (both bolus and infusion), intraperitoneal, subcutaneous or intramuscular form, all using forms well known to those of ordinary 20 skill in the pharmaceutical arts.

The dosage regimen utilizing the compounds of the present invention is selected in accordance with a variety of factors including type, species, age, weight, sex and medical condition of the patient; the severity of the condition to be treated; the route of administration; the 25 renal and hepatic function of the patient; and the particular compound or salt thereof employed. An ordinarily skilled physician or veterinarian can readily determine and prescribe the effective amount of the drug required to prevent, counter or arrest the progress of the condition.

Intravenous dosages or oral dosages of the compounds of the present invention, when used for the indicated effects, will range 30 between about 0.001 to 5 mg/kg and 0.1 to 50 mg/kg, respectively. Advantageously, compounds of the present invention may be administered in a single daily dose, or the total daily dosage may be administered in divided doses of two, three or four times daily.
35 Furthermore, preferred compounds for the present invention can be

34

administered in intranasal form via topical use of suitable intranasal vehicles, or via transdermal routes, using those forms of transdermal skin patches well known to those of ordinary skill in that art. To be administered in the form of a transdermal delivery system, the dosage 5 administration will, of course, be continuous rather than intermittent throughout the dosage regimen.

In the methods of the present invention, the compounds herein described in detail can form the active ingredient, and are typically administered in admixture with suitable pharmaceutical 10 diluents, excipients or carriers (collectively referred to herein as "carrier" materials) suitably selected with respect to the intended form of administration, that is, oral tablets, capsules, elixirs, syrups and the like, and consistent with conventional pharmaceutical practices.

For instance, for oral administration in the form of a tablet 15 or capsule, the active drug component can be combined with an oral, non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable inert carrier such as ethanol, glycerol, water and the like. Moreover, when desired or necessary, suitable binders, lubricants, disintegrating agents and coloring agents can also be incorporated into the mixture. Suitable binders include 20 starch, gelatin, natural sugars such as glucose or beta-lactose, corn sweeteners, natural and synthetic gums such as acacia, tragacanth or sodium alginate, carboxymethylcellulose, polyethylene glycol, waxes and the like. Lubricants used in these dosage forms include sodium oleate, sodium stearate, magnesium stearate, sodium benzoate, sodium 25 acetate, sodium chloride and the like. Disintegrators include, without limitation, starch, methyl cellulose, agar, bentonite, zanthan gum and the like.

The compounds of the present invention can also be administered in the form of liposome delivery systems, such as small 30 unilamellar vesicles, large unilamellar vesicles and multilamellar vesicles. Liposomes can be formed from a variety of phospholipids, such as cholesterol, stearylamine or phosphatidylcholines.

Throughout the instant application, the following abbreviations are used with the following meanings:

35 Bu butyl

	Bn	benzyl
	BOC, Boc	t-butyloxycarbonyl
	BOP	Benzotriazol-1-yloxy tris(dimethylamino)- phosphonium hexafluorophosphate
5	calc.	calculated
	CBZ, Cbz	Benzoyloxycarbonyl
	CDI	N,N'-carbonyl diimidazole
	DCC	Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide
	DCM	dichloromethane
10	DIEA	diisopropylethylamine
	DMF	N,N-dimethylformamide
	DMAP	4-Dimethylaminopyridine
	DSC	N,N'-disuccinimidyl carbonate
	EDC	1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodi-imide hydrochloride
15	EI-MS	Electron ion-mass spectroscopy
	Et	ethyl
	EtOAc	ethyl acetate
	EtOH	ethanol
20	eq.	equivalent(s)
	FAB-MS	Fast atom bombardment-mass spectroscopy
	HOAc	acetic acid
	HOBT, HOBt	Hydroxybenztriazole
25	HPLC	High pressure liquid chromatography
	KHMDS	Potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide
	LAH	Lithium aluminum hydride
	LHMDS	Lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide
	Me	methyl
30	MeOH	methanol
	MF	Molecular formula
	MHz	Megahertz
	MPLC	Medium pressure liquid chromatography
	NMM	N-Methylmorpholine
35	NMR	Nuclear Magnetic Resonance

36

	Ph	phenyl
	Pr	propyl
	prep.	prepared
	TFA	Trifluoroacetic acid
5	THF	Tetrahydrofuran
	TLC	Thin layer chromatography
	TMS	Trimethylsilane

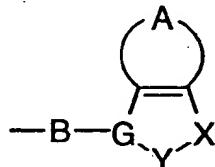
The instant compounds can be effective to inhibit the secretion of various hormones and trophic factors in mammals. They may be used to suppress certain endocrine secretions, such as GH, insulin, glucagon and prolactin, in the treatment of disorders such as acromegaly; endocrine tumors such as carcinoids, vipomas, insulinomas and glucagonomas; or diabetes and diabetes-related pathologies, including retinopathy, neuropathy and nephropathy. The compounds may also be used to suppress exocrine secretions in the pancreas, stomach and intestines, for treatment of disorders such as pancreatitis, fistulas, bleeding ulcers and diarrhea associated with such diseases as AIDS or cholera. Disorders involving autocrine or paracrine secretions of trophic factors such as IGF-1 (as well as some endocrine factors) which may be treated by administration of the instant compounds include cancers of the breast, prostate, and lung (both small cell and non-small cell epidermoids), as well as hepatomas, neuroblastomas, colon and pancreatic adenocarcinomas (ductal type), chondrosarcomas, and melanomas, and also atherosclerosis associated with vascular grafts and restenosis following angioplasty.

The compounds of the instant invention are further useful to suppress the mediators of neurogenic inflammation (e.g. substance P or the tachykinins), and may be used in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis; psoriasis; topical inflammation such as is associated with sunburn, eczema, or other sources of itching; and allergies, including asthma. The compounds can also function as neuromodulators in the central nervous system, with useful applications in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and other forms of dementia, pain (as a spinal analgesic), and headaches. Furthermore, in disorders involving the

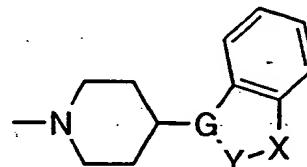
splanchnic blood flow, including cirrhosis and oesophageal varices, the compounds of the invention can provide cytoprotection.

- The preparation of compounds of Formula I of the present invention may be carried out in sequential or convergent synthetic routes. In the interest of clarity, the special case of Formula I, where B is 4-piperidinyl and A is a fused benzo ring as being unsubstituted (formula IIA), is depicted. Compounds fused with different aromatic or non aromatic rings and/or bearing additional substituents on these rings are readily prepared by minor modification of the methods herein with procedures known in the art. Syntheses detailing the preparation of the compounds of Formula I are presented in the following reaction schemes.

15



Formula IIA



Formula IIB

20

25

25

30

The phrase "standard peptide coupling reaction conditions" is used repeatedly here, and it means coupling a carboxylic acid with an amine using an acid activating agent such as EDC, DCC, and BOP in a inert solvent such as dichloromethane in the presence of a catalyst such as HOBT. The phrase "mixed urea formation" refers to conversion of two different amines to form their mixed urea by using phosgene or equivalents such as CDI, DSC, or p-nitrophenyl chloroformate. The reaction involves reacting one amine first with the phosgene or equivalents in the presence of a base such as NMM, TEA or DIEA in a inert solvent such as dichloromethane, THF and DMF or mixtures thereof, followed by addition of the second amine and a base such as NMM, TEA or DIEA. The uses of protective groups for amines and carboxylic acids to facilitate the desired reaction and minimize undesired reactions are well documented. Conditions required to remove protecting groups which may be present can be found in Greene, T., and Wuts, P. G. M., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John

38

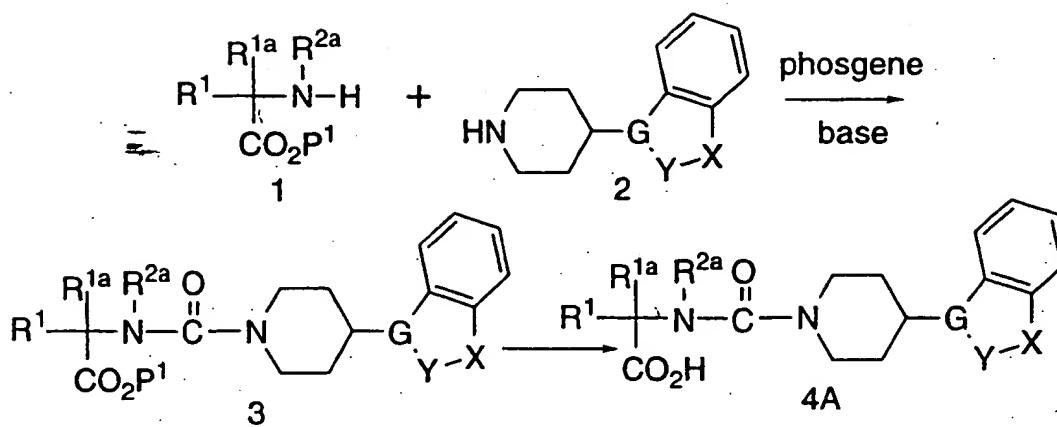
Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, NY 1991. CBZ and BOC were used extensively and their removal conditions are known to those skilled in the art. For example, removal of CBZ groups can be achieved by a number of methods such as catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of a 5 noble metal or its oxide such as palladium on activated carbon in a protic solvent such as ethanol. In cases where catalytic hydrogenation is contraindicated by the presence of other potentially reactive functionality, removal of CBZ groups can also be achieved by treatment with a solution of hydrogen bromide in acetic acid, or by treatment with 10 a mixture of TFA and dimethyl sulfide. Removal of BOC protecting groups is carried out in a solvent such as methylene chloride, methanol or ethyl acetate, with a strong acid, such as trifluoroacetic acid, hydrochloric acid or hydrogen chloride gas.

The protected amino acid derivatives required in the 15 synthesis of compounds of Formula 1 are, in many cases, commercially available, where the protecting group (P^1) is, for example, methyl, allyl or benzyl groups. Other protected amino acid can be prepared by literature methods (Williams, R. M. *Synthesis of Optically Active α-Amino Acids*, Pergamon Press: Oxford, 1989). Many of the piperidines 20 of Formula 2 are either commercially available or known in the literature and others can be prepared following literature methods described for analogous compounds. Some of these methods are illustrated in the subsequent schemes. Purification procedures include crystallization, normal phase or reverse phase chromatography.

The compounds of the present invention can be prepared 25 readily according to the following Schemes or modifications thereof using readily available starting materials, reagents and conventional synthesis procedures. In these reactions, it is also possible to make use of variants which are themselves known to those of ordinary skill in this 30 art, but are not mentioned in greater detail. The definition for R^1 , R^{1a} , R^2 , R^4 , R^5 , G, Y, X, Z^1 , Z^2 , W, Q, E, B, etc., is described above unless otherwise stated.

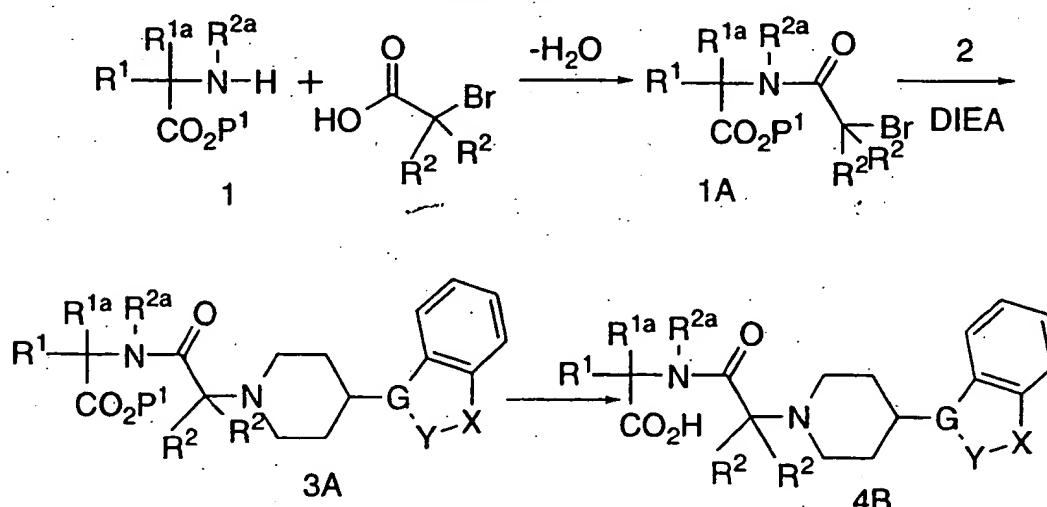
SCHEME 1

39



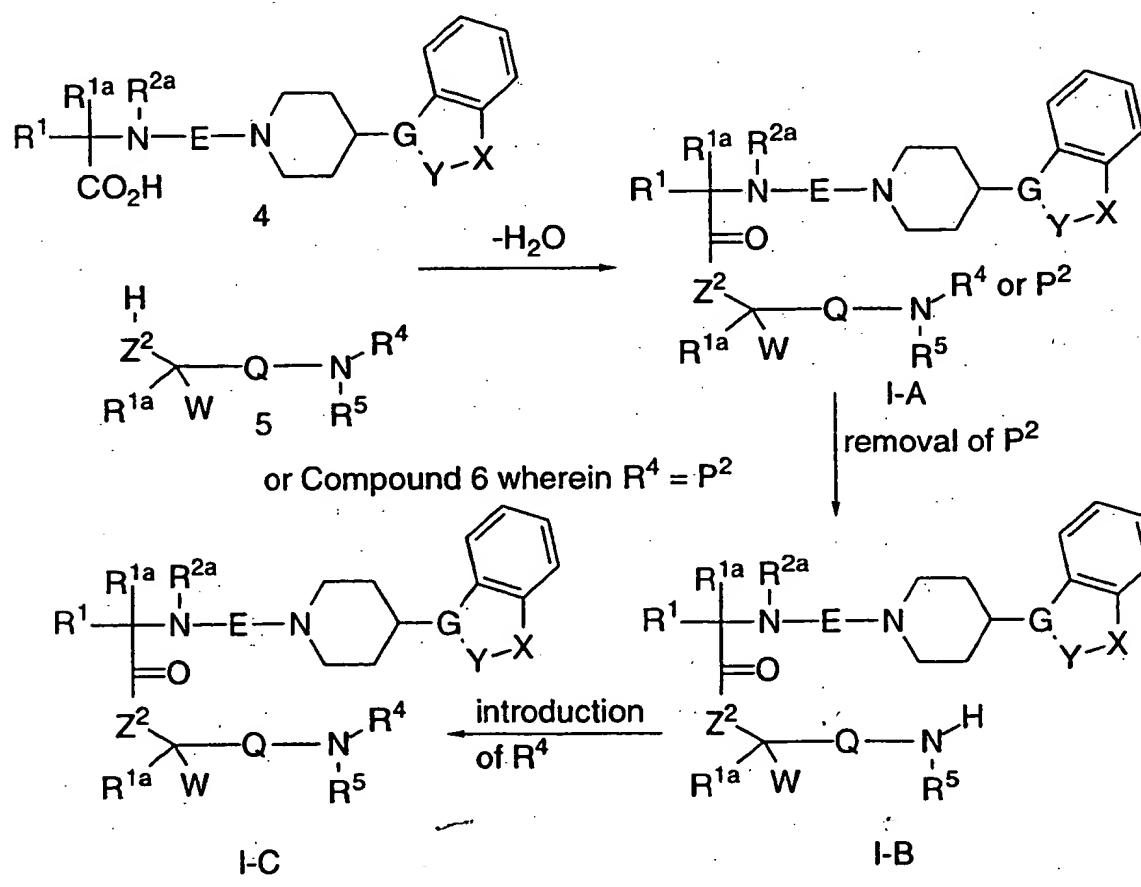
Intermediates of Formula 4A can be synthesized as described in Scheme 1. Mixed urea formation between the protected amino acid 1 and the piperidine of Formula 2, is conveniently carried out under usual urea formation reactions use phosgene or equivalents such as CDI, DSC, or p-nitrophenyl chloroformate. Removal of the P¹ protecting group can be achieved by saponification for most esters, or by catalytic hydrogenolysis when P¹ is benzyl, or by palladium (0) based homogeneous catalysis when P¹ is allyl. Intermediate 4A can be used as a common intermediate for the synthesis of somatostatin agonists with variation of the rest of the molecule of Formula I as shown in Scheme 2.

SCHEME 1A



4C

The preparation of amide intermediates of formula 4B can be achieved as shown in Scheme 1A. Standard peptide coupling reactions of protected amino acid 1 with 2-halo acids such as 2-bromoacetic acid gives intermediate 1A, which when reacted with amine of formula 2 gives the compound as 3A in the presence of a non-nucleophilic base such as DIEA. The P1 protecting group can be removed as described above.

SCHEME 2

10

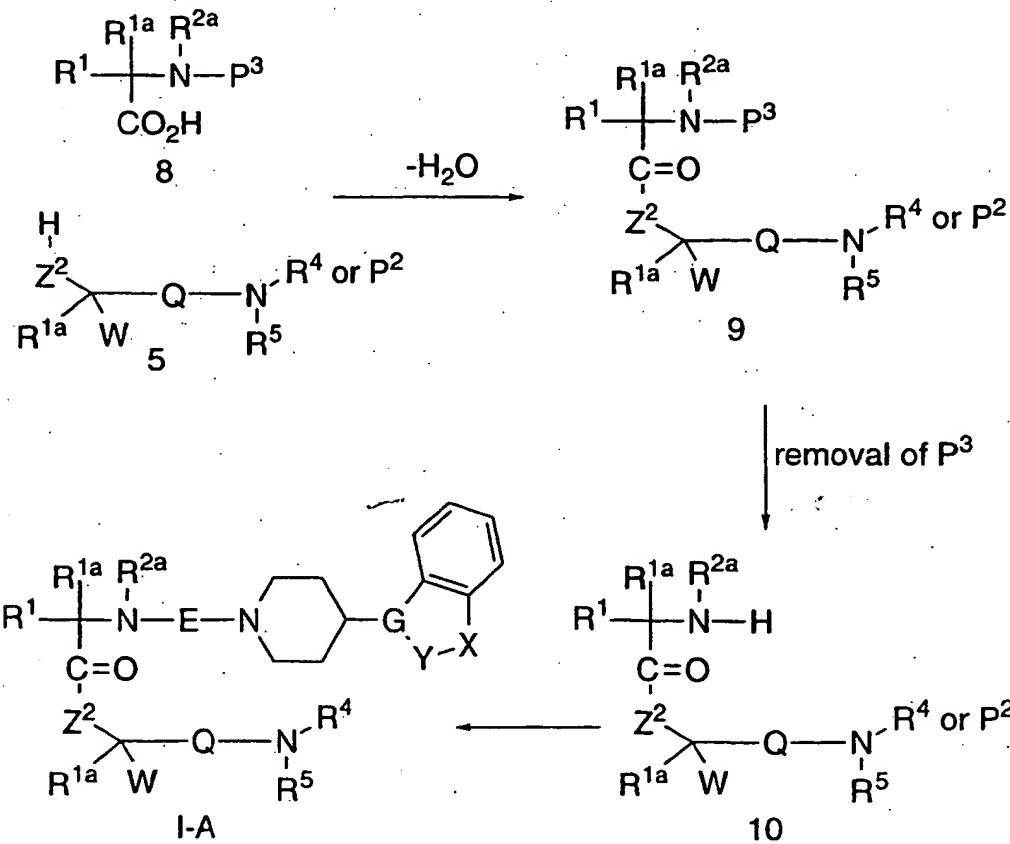
Intermediates of Formula 4 can be coupled to intermediates of formula 5 (or formula 6 wherein R^4 is P^2) wherein Z^2 is oxygen or substituted nitrogen to afford compounds of Formula I-A under standard ester or peptide coupling reaction conditions. P^2 is an amine protecting group such as BOC, Cbz, etc. Many of the selectively protected

47

diamines or amino alcohol's of Formula 5 are either commercially available or known in the literature and others can be prepared following literature methods described for analogous compounds. Some of these methods are illustrated in subsequent schemes. Also if R⁴ or R⁵ is a hydrogen then the protected amino acids 6 are employed in the coupling reaction, wherein P² is a protecting group as defined above. The removal of P² in I-A to afford I-B, can be carried out as noted above. R⁴ as defined above can then be optionally introduced to yield compound of general formula I-C according to procedures known in the art. For example, if R⁴ is a substituted alkyl group, it can be introduced by reductive amination or opening of epoxide, or by alkylation by an alkyl halide; if R⁴ is an amidino group, it can be introduced by the reagents such as 1-amidino-3,5-dimethylpyrazole nitrate (Methods Enzymol., 25b, 558, 1972).

15

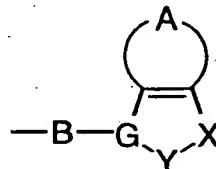
SCHEME 3



42

Alternatively, compounds of Formula I can be prepared starting from compound 5. The protected amino acid derivatives 8 are in many cases commercially available, where P3 is, for example, BOC, Cbz, Fmoc, and the like. N-Protected amino acid 8 can be coupled to 5 intermediates of formula 5, wherein Z² is oxygen or substituted nitrogen to afford compounds of Formula 9 under standard ester or peptide coupling reaction conditions. The protecting group in compound 8 is selected with the criteria that its removal can be achieved without removing P². When the P² protecting group is removed to afford 10 compound 10, this compound can be further converted to compounds of formula I-A according to the procedures described in Scheme 1 and Scheme 1A. Further elaboration of compound I-A to I-B and I-C are illustrated in Scheme 2.

15

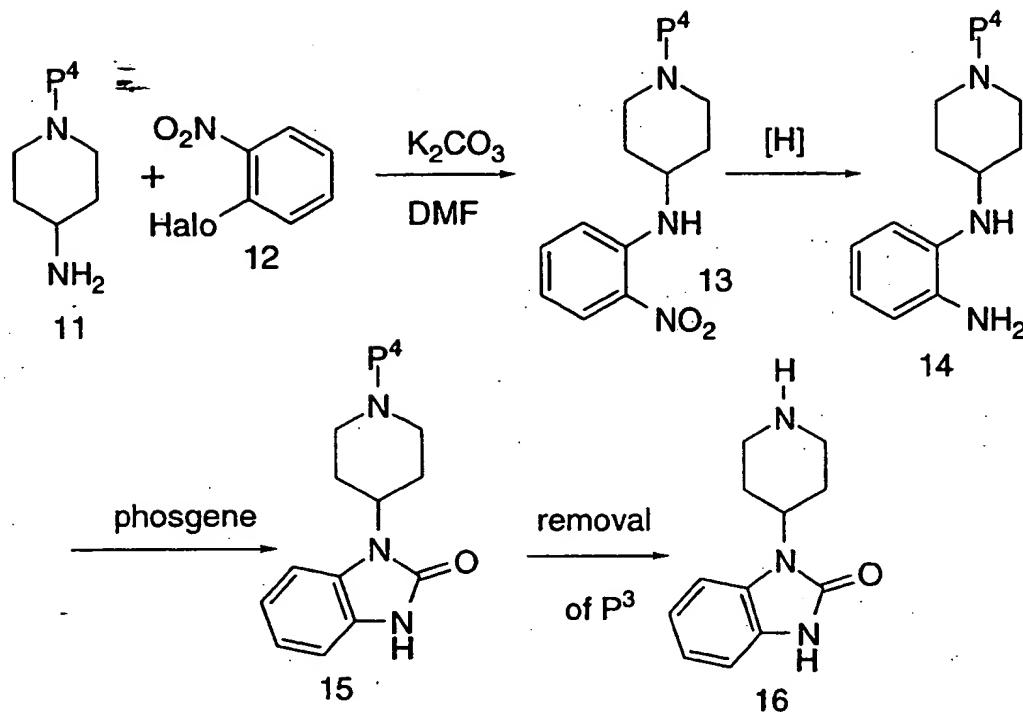


Formula II

20

The preparation of compounds of formula II within the scope of this invention may be achieved by methods known in the art. Such methods are illustrated in the following schemes for piperidines with A shown as an unsubstituted fused benzo ring. Analogous methods may be used for the preparation of the other ring compounds or with different substitutions on the ring or both as defined herein. In the interest of clarity, the benzo rings in the following schemes are depicted as being unsubstituted. Compounds 25 bearing additional substituents on the benzo rings are readily prepared by minor modification of the methods herein with procedures known in the art.

43

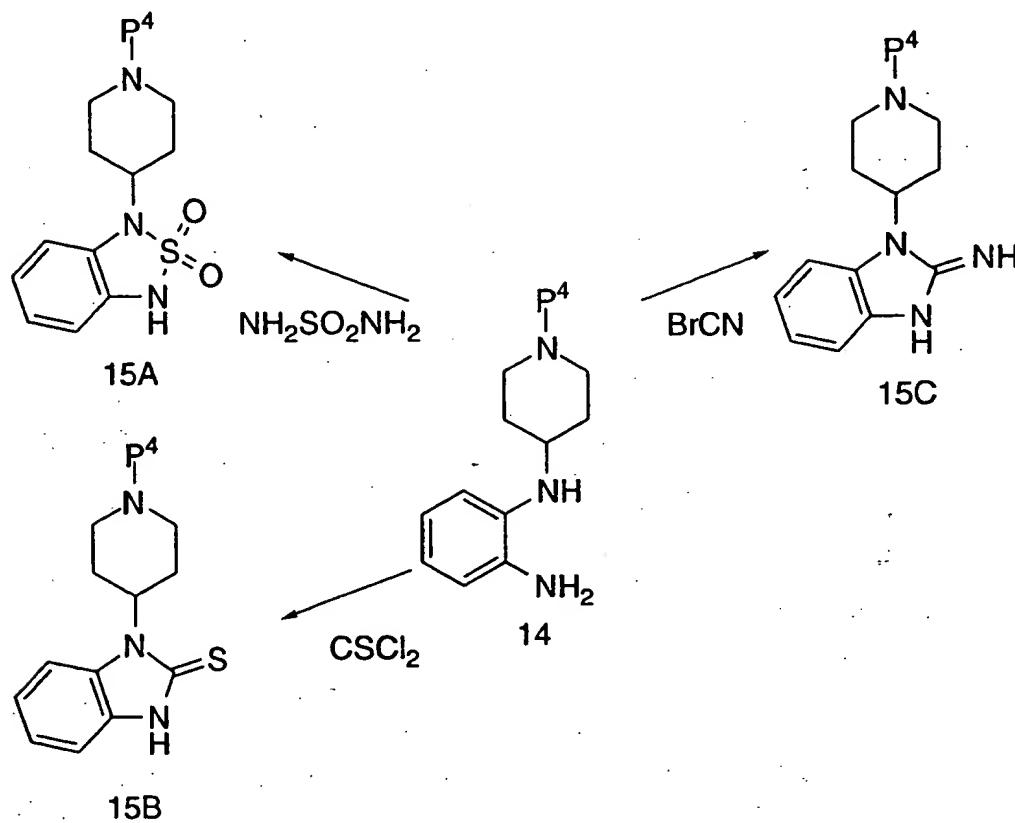
SCHEME 4

The piperidinylbenzimidazolinone 16 without substitution is commercially available; derivatives with substituents on the benzene ring are prepared by the methods shown in Scheme 4 as described in *J. Med. Chem.*, 30, 814-819 (1987) and U.S. Patent No. 3,910,930, hereby incorporated by reference. P^4 is a protecting group such as benzyl, methyl, BOC, Cbz, ethyloxycarbonyl and the like. Thus, condensation of the commercially available 4-aminopiperidine 11, where P^4 is $C(O)OEt$, with a substituted o-halo nitrobenzene 12 gives the nitro compound 13. Reduction of the nitro group to an amine can be accomplished by catalytic hydrogenation with a catalyst such as Raney Ni, palladium on carbon or platinum on carbon in a protic solvent such as ethanol. Ring closure can be effected by phosgene or its equivalent such as DSC, CDI in the presence of a base. The protecting group P^4 can be removed by alkaline hydrolysis in the case of $C(O)OEt$ or can be removed by the standard deprotection conditions as described in Greene, T., and Wuts,

44

P. G. M., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, NY 1991.

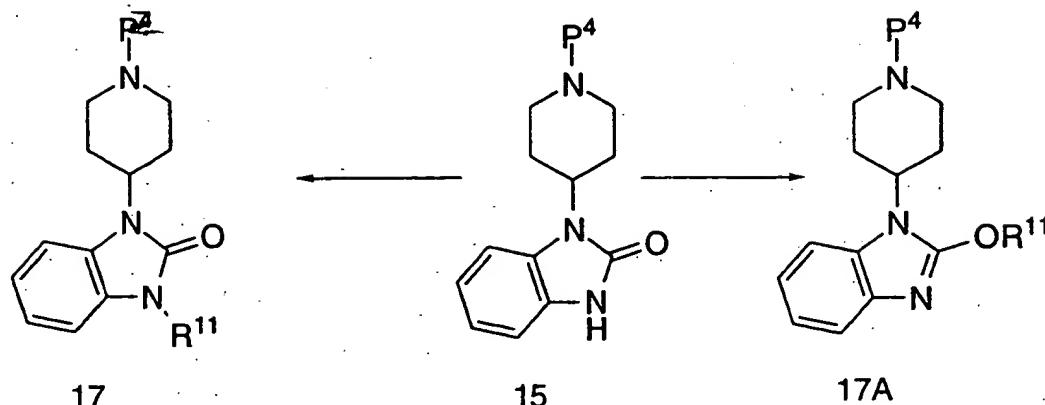
SCHEME 5



5

- Similarly, other groups as defined by Y in compounds of Formula I can be prepared according to the reactions shown in Scheme 5. Thus, cyclic sulfamide 15 A can be prepared by reacting the diamine 14 and 10 sulfamide; reaction of diamine 14 with thiophosgene or equivalents in the presence of a base gives the thiourea 15B; and reaction with cyanogen bromide yields compound 15C. The protecting group P⁴ can be removed as described above.

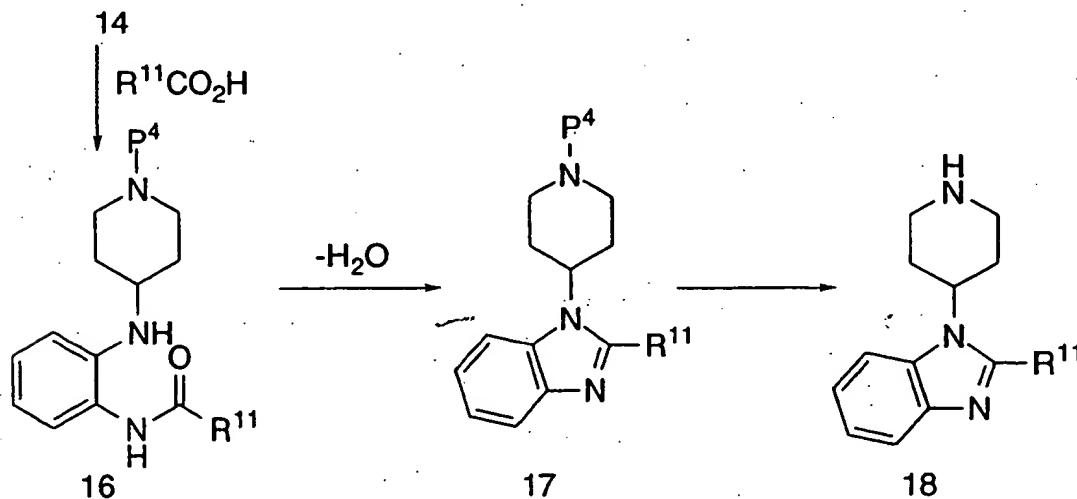
45

SCHEME 6

5

Benzimidazolones can be modified to introduce substituent R¹¹ through alkylation, acylation etc. with appropriate protecting group P⁴ on the piperidine nitrogen. Similarly, compounds 15 A-C and 14D can be modified as defined by X and Y in formula I. The protecting group P⁴ is selected in a way that its removal will not cause removal or alteration of R¹¹.

10

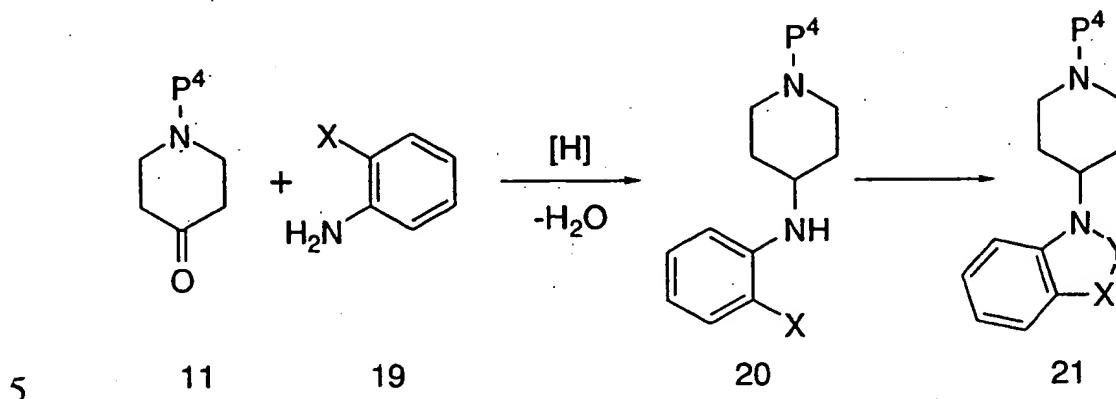
SCHEME 7

15

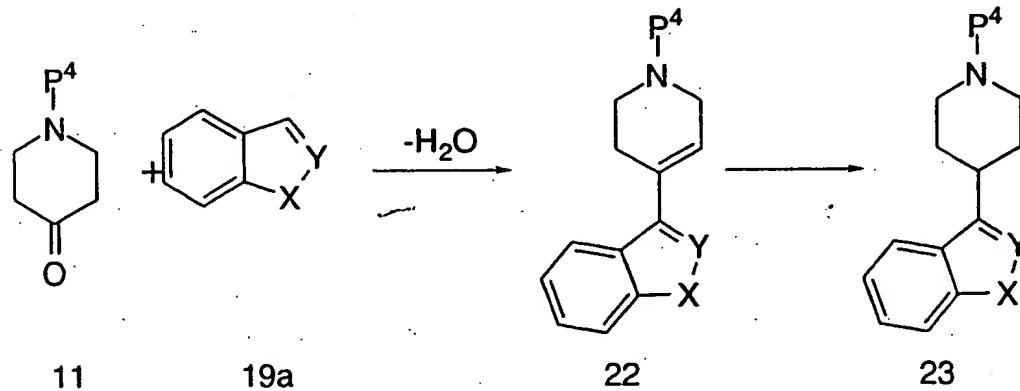
In cases where R¹¹ is attached directly to the ring, such compounds can be prepared according to Scheme 7. Coupling compound 14 with a carboxylic acid or equivalents followed by ring closure under

46

dehydration conditions gives compound 17. Removal of the P⁴ protecting group yields the compound 18.

SCHEME 8

Alternatively, the ortho substituted aniline compound 19, where X is -OH, -NH₂, -NR¹¹H, -SH, -CH₂OH, -CH₂NH₂, -CH₂NR¹¹H, -CH₂SH etc. can be reductively aminated with a protected 4-piperidinone 11 to afford compound 20. Ring closure can be effected through the chemistry discussed above.

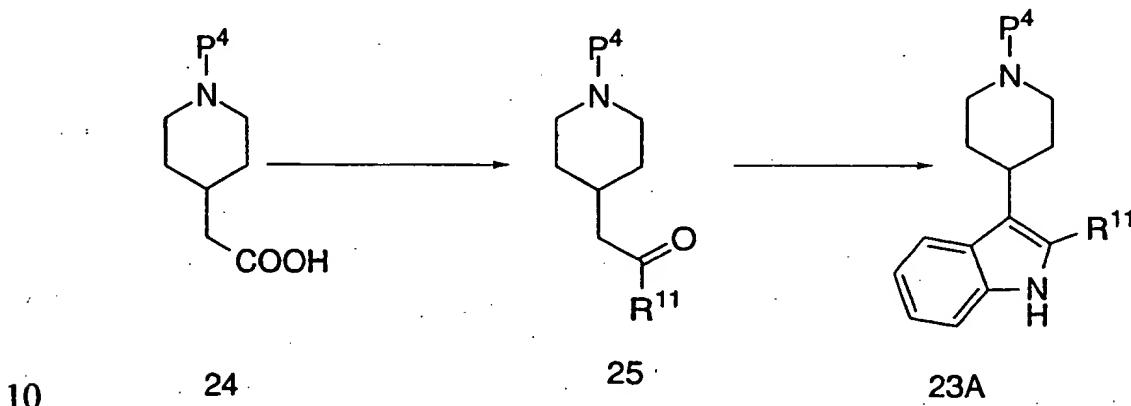
SCHEME 9

An alternative preparation involves an acid catalyzed coupling reaction of a protected 4-piperidinone 11 with an electron rich aromatic compound such as 19a, where X is O, S, NH or N-alkyl, and Y

47

is CH, COH, COR¹¹, CH or N. The resulting 4-substituted tetrahydropyridines 22 obtained by this method can be elaborated to the instant compounds by utilizing chemistry detailed in Schemes 1-8. The 4-substituted tetrahydropyridines 22 can be hydrogenated by use of 5 platinum or palladium catalysts in a protic solvent like methanol to give piperidines of formula 23 which can also be elaborated to the instant compounds of Formula I.

SCHEME 10

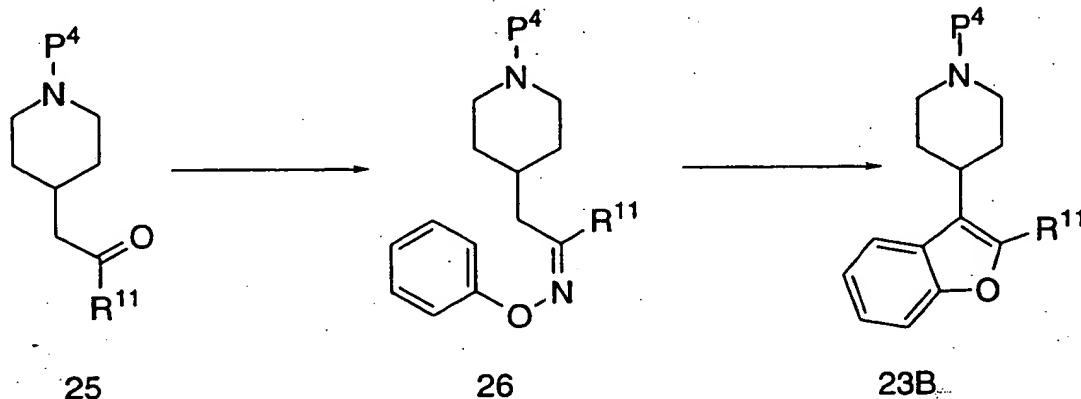


A specific indole embodiment of compound 23, where X=NH and Y=CR¹¹ and R¹¹ is H or alkyl, can be prepared using a Fisher indole synthesis protocol (see *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.*, 563 (1981); 15 *J. Chem. Soc.*, 3175 (1957)) starting from a ketone or aldehyde and an aromatic hydrazine. Specifically, piperidines of formula 23A may be prepared from the protected piperidine acetic acid compound 24 as shown in Scheme 10. Conversion of the known carboxylic acid 24 to the corresponding aldehyde or ketones can be effected by a variety of 20 conditions known in the art. For example, treatment of 24 with either oxalyl chloride or thionyl chloride in an inert solvent like benzene or carbon tetrachloride gives the corresponding acid chloride that is converted to the aldehyde 25 (R¹¹=H) by a Rosemund reduction. The conversion can also be effected by the Weinreb protocol in which an N,O-dimethyl hydroxylamine amide is reacted with a Grignard reagent to 25 give the ketone or is reacted with LAH to give the aldehyde. Most hydrazines are commercially available or known in the literature and

48

can be prepared accordingly. The condensation of the ketone 25 and hydrazine under the Fisher indole synthesis conditions yields the indole compound 23A. The protecting group P⁴ can be removed by standard protocols and elaborated to the instant compounds by using chemistry presented in Schemes 1-8.

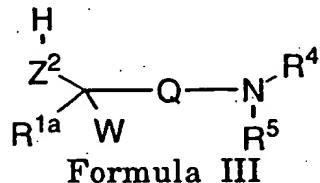
5

SCHEME 11

An analogous synthesis of benzofurans of formula 23B from o-aryloximes is exemplified by the transformation of 25 to 26 (see *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 2867 (1967)) as depicted in Scheme 12.

10

15

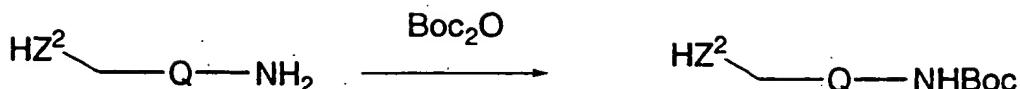


20

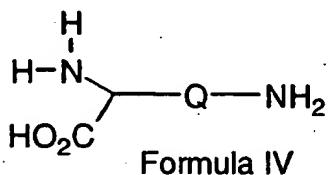
In many cases, compounds of Formula III or its mono protected form within the scopes of this invention are either commercially available or known in the art. In the simplest case where Z² is NH or O, R^{1a}, W, R⁴ and R⁵ are H's, Q is $-(\text{CH}_2)_x-\text{V}-(\text{CH}_2)_y-$; where x and y are 1-7, the formula represents diamines some of which are commercially available. Mono Boc protected amine can be prepared by reacting excess diamine with Boc₂O in methanol, where Boc protected amino alcohols can be prepared by reacting the amino alcohol with Boc₂O.

25

49



The above procedure is also applicable to compounds of formula III where R^{1a} and W are groups as defined before.



Compounds of Formula IV represent amino acids, which in some cases are commercially available. Amino acids can be modified to give compounds as defined by the scope of the instant application. For example, with the two amino groups properly protected, the carboxylic acid can be converted into its next higher homologue, or to a derivative of the homologous acid, such as amide or ester by an Arndt-Eistert reaction. The acid can also be converted to amides with a variety of amines as defined. The acid can be reduced to alcohol, which can be converted to ether by alkylation or reduced with methods known to those skilled in the art.

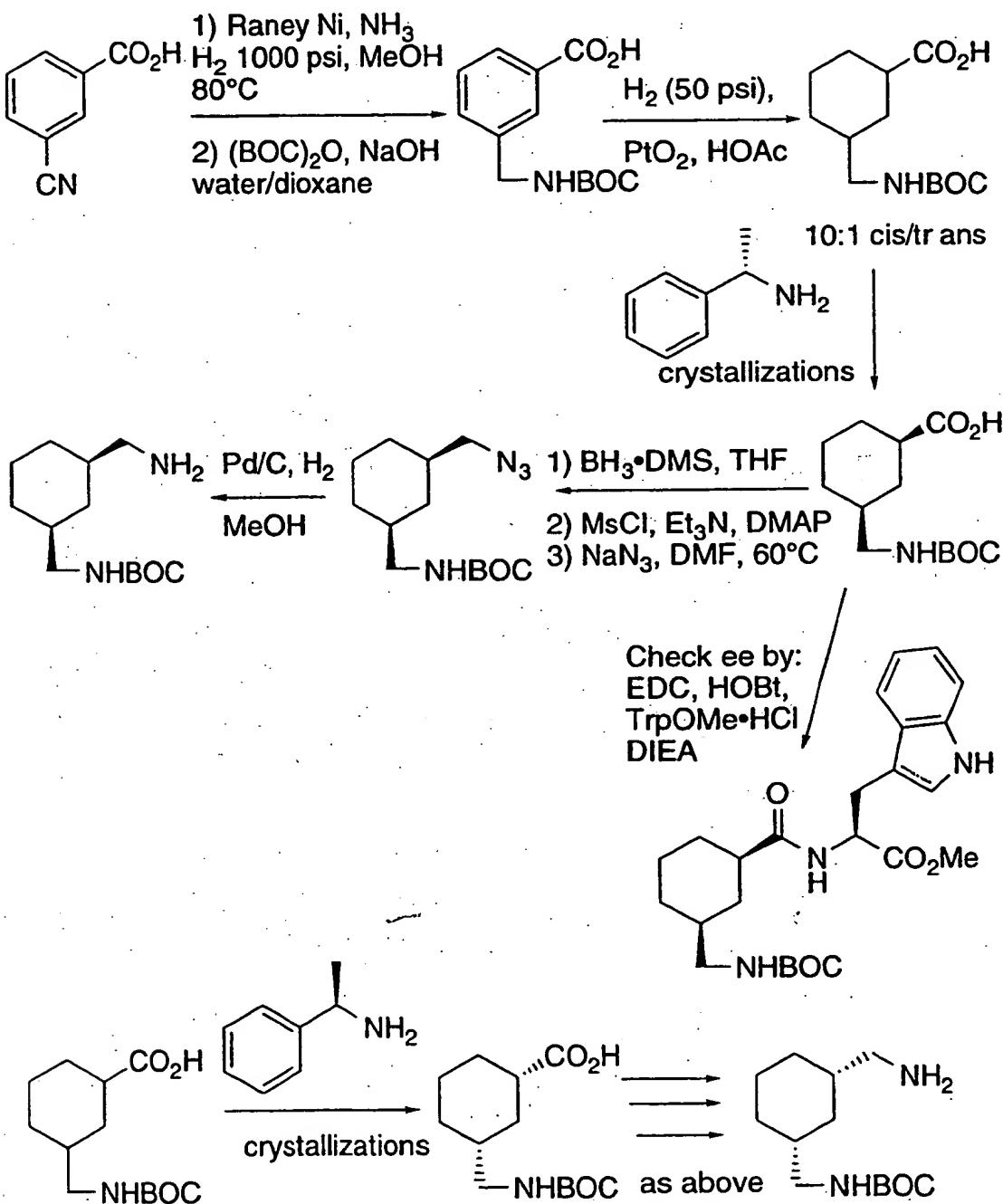
Optically pure cis-3-aminomethyl-1-BOC-aminomethyl cyclohexane enantiomers are prepared (Scheme 12) starting from commercially available *m*-cyanobenzoic acid. Reduction of the nitrile with Raney Ni/H₂ is followed by protection of the resulting 1° amino group. Reduction of the aromatic ring is then accomplished using PtO₂ as catalyst to give predominantly the cis-cyclohexane carboxylic acid. A sequence of crystallizations using either (S) or (R)-*a*-methylbenzylamine to form the salt, generates the homochiral cis acids as shown below.

Enantiomeric purity is evaluated by derivatization of the acids with Trp-OMe and integration of the methoxy methyl singlets in the ¹H NMR spectra. The absolute stereochemistries are determined by solving the x-ray structure for the pure salt obtained from crystallization with the S-enantiomer of *a*-methylbenzylamine and are as shown in Scheme 12 below. Borane reduction of the pure acids, followed by conversion of the resulting alcohols to their mesylates and displacement with azide anion

50

furnishes the corresponding azidomethyl compounds. Reduction of the azide group (Pd/C, H₂) gives the desired amines, ready for incorporation into final target compounds.

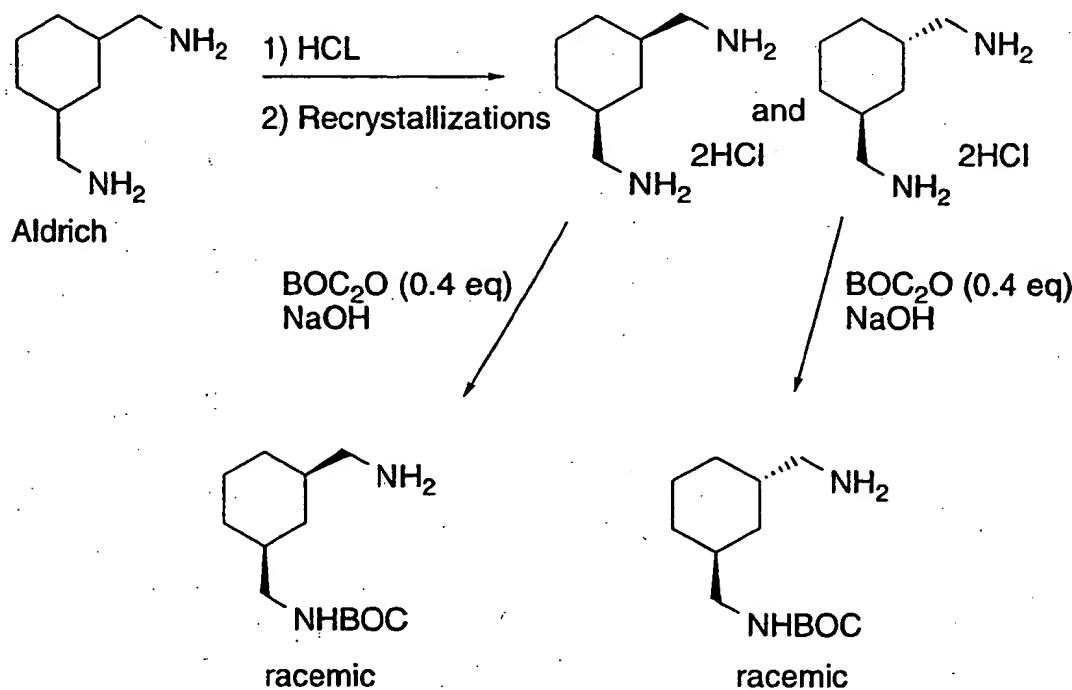
5

SCHEME 12

5

The racemic cis and trans-3-aminomethyl-1-BOC-aminomethyl cyclohexane isomers are also prepared (Scheme 13) and incorporated into target compounds. Commercially available bis-aminomethylcyclohexane (sold as a mixture of cis and trans isomers) is resolved into the pure cis and pure trans isomers by conversion to the dihydrochloride salts and crystallization from methanol/ethyl acetate. Mono-BOC protection is accomplished by slow addition of BOC₂O to an excess of the diamines.

SCHEME 13

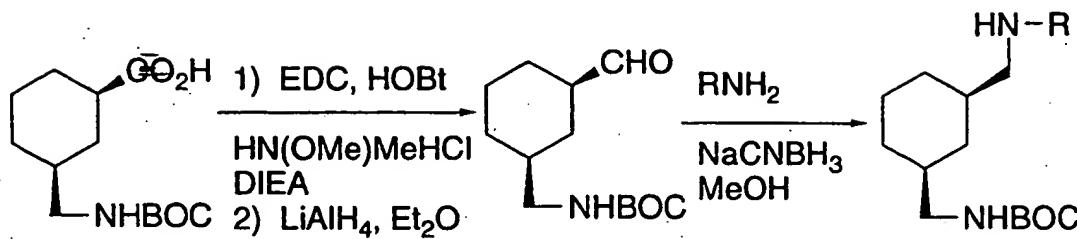


10

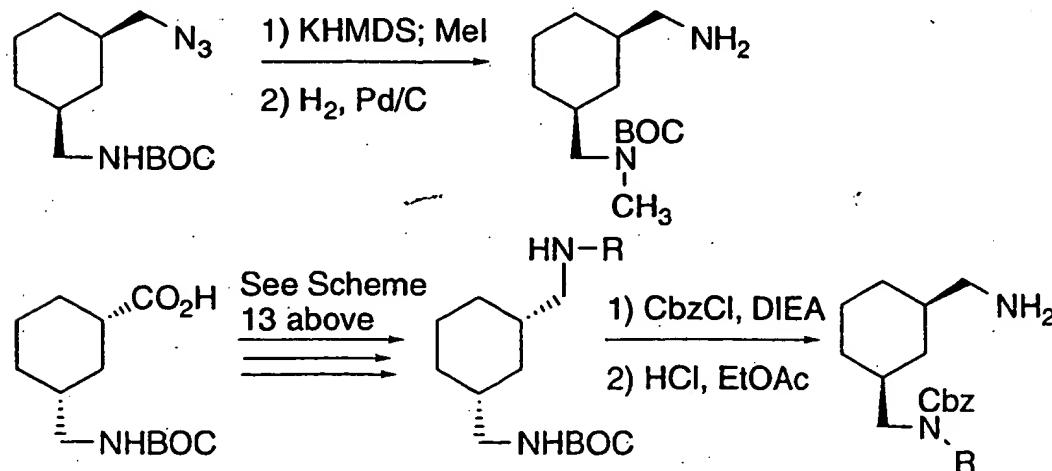
15

Secondary amines derived from homochiral cis-3-aminomethyl-1-BOC-aminomethyl cyclohexane are also introduced into target analogs. These secondary amines are prepared (Scheme 14) starting from the corresponding pure acids (see Scheme 12 for preparation of acids) by conversion to the Wienreb amides, followed by reduction to the corresponding aldehydes. Reductive amination with a variety of amines furnished the secondary amines.

53

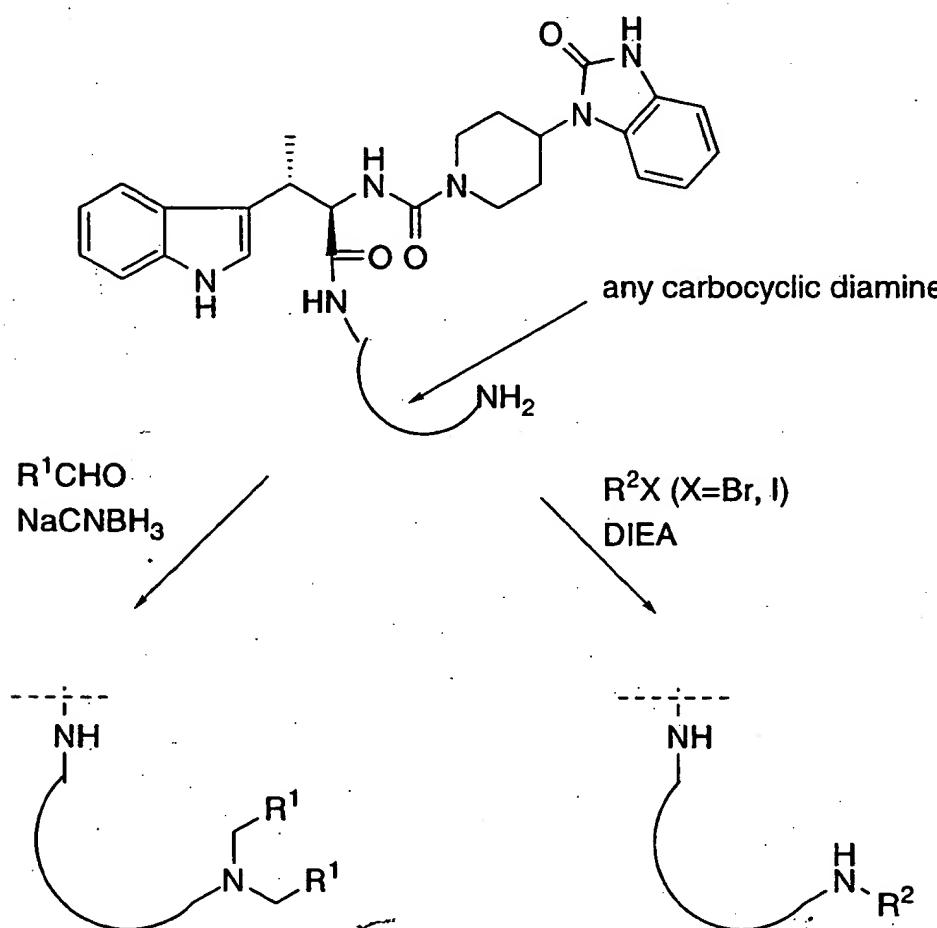
SCHEME 14

- 5 Precursor amines possessing secondary amino functionality at what would ultimately be the terminal amino group in the final target analogs are prepared by various means. For example (Scheme 15), the azide intermediate below (prepared as described in Scheme 12) is deprotonated with KHMDS and alkylated with methyl iodide; reduction of the azide group then provides the N-methyl-N-BOC precursor. Another strategy (Scheme 15) starts with the acid intermediate described earlier. Conversion to the corresponding secondary amines is achieved in the same fashion as described in Scheme 13. Protection of the secondary amine is carried out using Cbz-Cl; removal of the BOC group then gives the N-alkyl-N-Cbz-amines, ready for incorporation into target analogs.

SCHEME 15

53

Final target terminating in either tertiary or secondary amines could alternatively be prepared at a later stage of the synthesis (Scheme 16). Fully assembled primary amine-based compounds can be reductively alkylated with aldehydes to give the tertiary amines or alkylated with alkyl halides to give secondary amines.

SCHEME 16

10

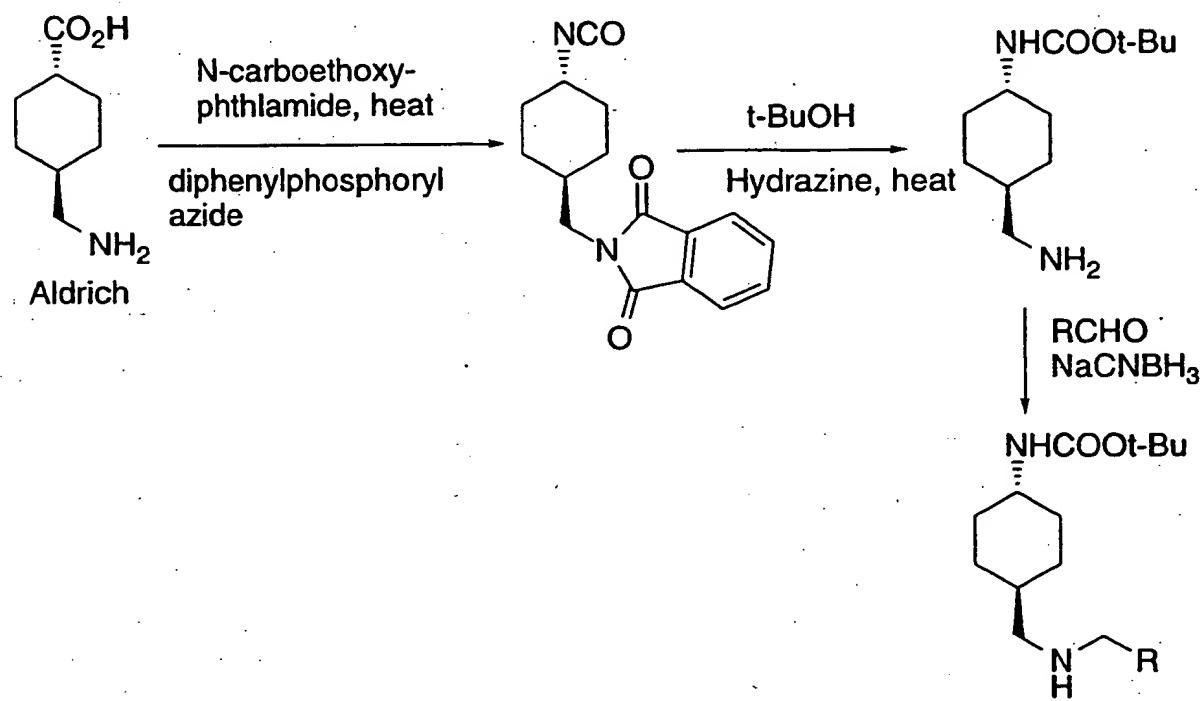
Trans-1-N-BOC-amino-4-aminomethylcyclohexanes are prepared from the commercially available amino acid shown below (Scheme 17). Protection of the amine as its phthalimide, followed by Curtius rearrangement gives the amino-protected isocyanide. Trapping of the isocyanide with *t*-butanol, is then followed by removal of the phthalimide protecting group using hydrazine to provide the target

15

54

amine, which is incorporated into various analogs. Reductive alkylation of the free amine with various aldehydes gives secondary amines which are also incorporated into final target analogs.

5

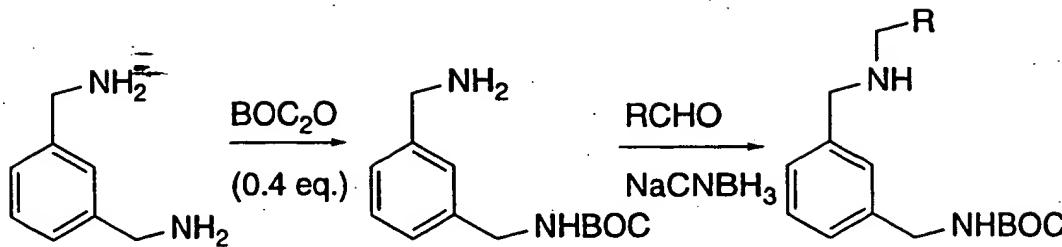
SCHEME 17

Mono-protected-1,3-bisaminomethylbenzene intermediates

- 10 also lead to potent analogs. These are prepared (Scheme 18) starting from commercially available *m*-xylylenediamine. Slow addition of BOC₂O to an excess of diamine furnishes the mono-protected amine, which is employed in the synthesis of target compounds. Alternatively, reductive alkylation with a variety of aldehydes gives the corresponding
 15 secondary amines.

15

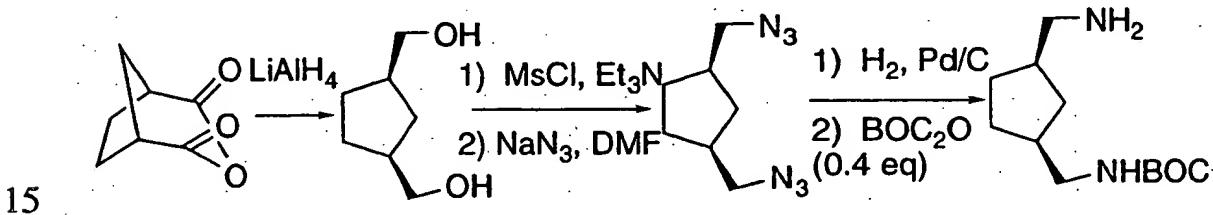
SCHEME 18



- 5 Racemic cis-3-aminomethyl-1-BOC-
aminomethylcyclopentane is prepared as shown in Scheme 19.
Reduction of the commercially available anhydride give cis-
hydroxymethylcyclopentane. Conversion to the bis-mesylate, followed by
displacement with azide results in the corresponding bis-azide.

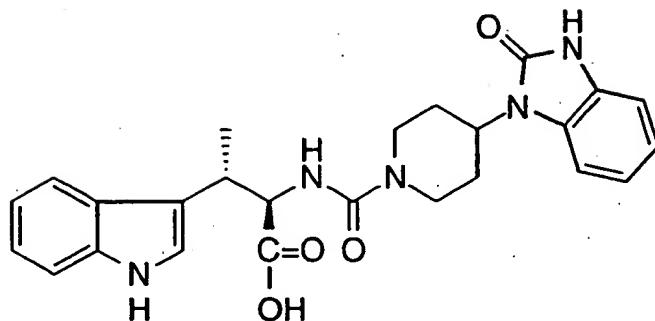
10 Reduction of the mono-protection (as described previously) provides the
desired intermediate amine.

SCHEME 19

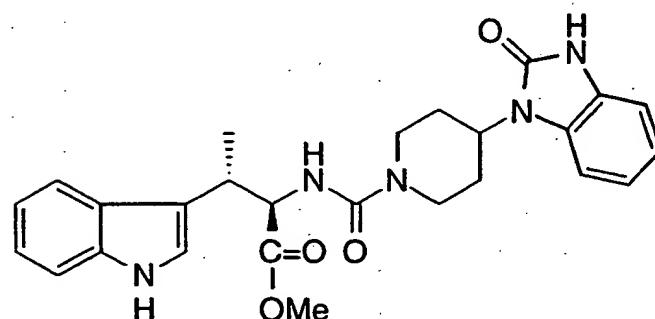


- The preferred compounds of the invention are any or all of those specifically set forth in the Examples below. These compounds are not, however, to be construed as forming the only genus that is considered as the invention, and any combination of the compounds or their moieties may itself form a genus. The following examples further illustrate details for the preparation of the compounds of the present invention. Those skilled in the art will readily understand that known variations of the conditions and processes of the following preparative procedures can be used to prepare these compounds. All temperatures are degrees Celsius unless noted otherwise.

56

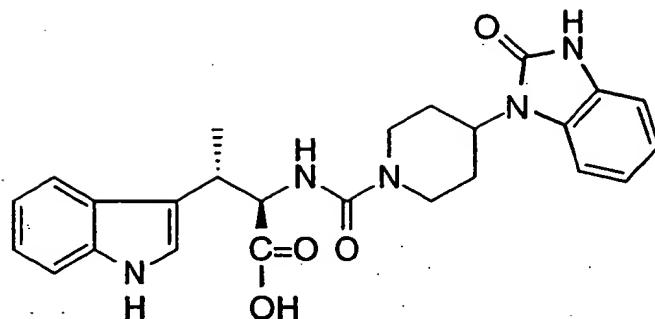
INTERMEDIATE 1Step A:

5



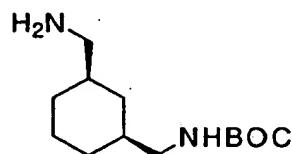
b-Methyl-D-Tryptophan methyl ester (6.00 g, 25.9 mmol) was combined with disuccinimidyl carbonate (6.95 g, 27.1 mmol) and DIEA (11.3 mL, 64.6 mmol) in dichloromethane. After stirring the reaction mixture for 0.5 h, 4-(2-keto-1-benzimidazolinyl)-piperidine (5.90 g, 27.1 mmol) was added and the mixture was permitted to stir over night. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, and washed in succession with 1N HCl (100 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (100 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting crude product was purified by MPLC (silica, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate) to give 7.55 g of a white solid.

57

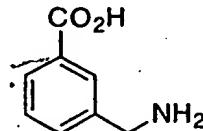
Step B:

5 The coupled product from the previous step (7.55 g, 15.9 mmol) was dissolved in THF (30 mL), treated with LiOH (2.67 g, 63.6 mmol) in 1:1 EtOH/water (60 mL) and stirred for 4h at room temperature. The pH was adjusted to ~2-3 by addition of 3N HCl and the resulting solution was extracted with ethyl acetate 3 times. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give 6.50 g of a white solid.

10

INTERMEDIATE 2a, 2b (both enantiomers)

15

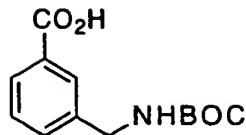
Step A:

20 Commercially available *m*-cyanobenzoic acid (38 g, 0.26 mol) was dissolved in methanol (350 mL). Raney Ni (2 g) was added and 75 mL of NH₃ was condensed into the vessel. The resulting mixture was agitated at 80°C under 1000 psi H₂ for 16 h. The mixture was filtered through celite and concentrated. The crude product was used in the

25

following step.

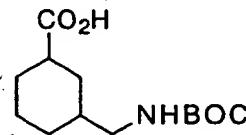
58

Step B:

5 To the crude product from the above step (0.26 mol) was added a solution of NaOH (18.7 g, 0.468 mol) in water (200 mL). Then BOC₂O (62 g, 0.28 mol) in *p*-dioxane (200 mL) was added via addition funnel over 0.5 h. After an additional 2 h the reaction mixture was concentrated to remove the dioxane and then washed twice with DCM (200 mL).

10 The aqueous phase was acidified by slow addition of conc. HCl while cooling in an ice bath. Some gas evolution indicated the presence of residual Raney Ni. The aqueous mixture was then extracted twice with ether (200 mL). The combined ethereal extracts were washed with 1N HCl (200 mL), and brine (200 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and

15 concentrated to afford 33.3 g of a white solid.

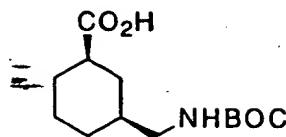
Step C:

10:1 cis/trans

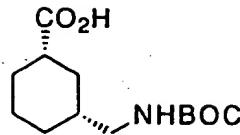
20 To a solution of the product from the previous step (10.0 g, 39.8 mmol) in glacial acetic acid (40 mL) was added PtO₂ and the resulting mixture was agitated under 50 psi H₂ for overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the filter cake was further washed with two portions of methanol (50 mL each). The filtrate was concentrated. The remaining acetic acid was removed by toluene/acetic acid azeotrope. The product (13.15 g) was collected as a white solid. ¹H NMR analysis indicated that the product was \geq 10:1 cis/trans.

CI-MS calc. for C₁₃H₂₃NO₄: 257; Found 258 (M+H).

59

Step D:

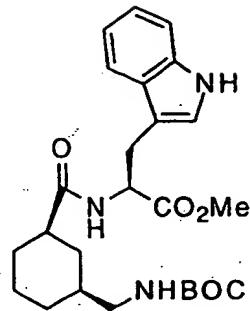
and



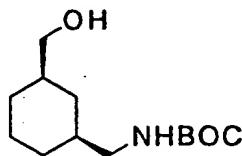
- 5 The racemic product of the above reaction (78 g, 0.30 mol) was combined with (39 mL, 0.30 mol) in hot ethyl acetate. Slow cooling to room temperature with gentle stirring and continued stirring overnight afforded crystals. The above was repeated four times (pure seed crystals from an earlier purification facilitated more efficient
- 10 purification). The resulting salt was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 3 N HCl. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated to afford 9.3 g of optically enhanced acid. The purity of the acid was found to be $\geq 20:1$ by derivatization as described below. The absolute stereochemistry of both stereocenters was
- 15 established by x-ray crystallographic analysis of the final pure (*S*)- α -methylbenzylamine salt (see below) as being (*R*) alpha to the carboxyl group and (*S*) alpha to the BOC-aminomethyl group. The combined mother liquors from the above purification were converted back to free acid as described above. Three recrystallizations of the acid recovered
- 20 from the ML were carried out in the same fashion using (*R*)- α -methylbenzylamine to give (after extractive removal of the amine) 9.6 g of free acid of the opposite absolute stereochemistry as for the initial batch described above. Again, the purity was demonstrated to be $\geq 20:1$ by ^1H NMR analysis of a derivative.

25

(20)

Determination of optical purity:

- A small sample of the acid purified as described above (10.8 mg, 0.0420 mmol) was combined with H-Trp-OMe•HCl (14 mg, 0.055 mmol), EDC (12 mg, 0.063 mmol), HOEt (9.0 mg, 0.063 mmol) and DIEA (10 mL, 0.055 mmol) in DCM (1 mL). The resulting solution was allowed to stir at rt for 3h at which time no acid starting material could be detected by TLC analysis. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (10 mL) and washed sequentially with 1 N HCl (3 X 5 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (3 X 5 mL) and brine (5 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. ¹H NMR analysis of the crude product indicated an isomer ratio of ~ 25:1 by integration of the singlet signals arising from the Lys-OMe group.
- 15 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 8.35 (br s, 1H), 7.50 (d, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (d, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.17 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.09 (t, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 6.94 (d, J=1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.95 (d, J=7.6 Hz, 1H), 4.91 (m, 1H), 4.59 (br s, 1H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 3.31 (dd, J=6.1, 15.2 Hz, 2H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 2.83 (m, 1H), 1.99 (m, 1H), 1.86-1.60 (m, 5H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.31-1.12 (m, 2H), 0.98 (q, J=11.4 Hz, 1H), 20 0.82 (m, 1H).

Step E:

25

The pure (3*S*)-BOC-aminomethyl cyclohexane-(1*R*)-carboxylic acid (495 mg, 1.92 mmol) was dissolved in THF (5 mL), cooled to 0°C and treated dropwise with a 2 M solution of BH₃•DMS in THF (1.6

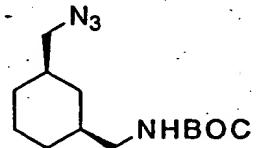
61

mL, 3.2 mmol). After an additional 5 min at 0°C the temperature was permitted to warm to rt and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5 h. Water was then added dropwise to quench the remaining borane.

When gas evolution ceased the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (75 mL) and washed sequentially with 1N HCl (50 mL), and brine (50 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to afford the crude product (534 mg) which was used without further purification. The alcohol of the opposite absolute stereochemistry was prepared in the same way.

10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 4.60 (br s, 1H), 3.42 (m, 2H), 2.94 (m, 2H), 1.82-1.68 (m, 5H), 1.48 (m, 1H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.23 (m, 1H), 0.82 (m, 2H), 0.58 (q, J=12.4 Hz, 1H).

15 Step F:

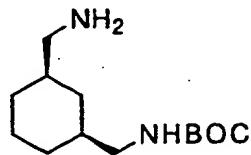


To a solution of the alcohol prepared as described above (445 mg, 1.83 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) at 0°C was added triethylamine (510 mL, 3.66 mmol) and DMAP (ca. 50 mg, catalytic), followed in turn by methane sulfonyl chloride (160 mL, 2.01 mmol). After 1.5 h the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (75 mL) and washed sequentially with 1N HCl (2X50 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (2X50 mL), and brine (50 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to provide the mesylate product (594 mg) which was used immediately in the following reaction. A solution of the mesylate (590 mg, 1.83 mmol) and NaN₃ (238 mg, 3.66 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was stirred at 65 °C for 7 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with ether (60 mL) and washed five times with water (40 mL each) and once with brine (40 mL). The ethereal layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give 422.7 mg of crude product. The azide of the opposite absolute stereochemistry was prepared in the same fashion from the corresponding alcohol.

(2)

¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 4.58 (br s, 1H), 3.12 (dd, J=6.4, 1.6 Hz, 2H), 2.95 (m, 2H), 1.82-1.68 (m, 4H), 1.57 (m, 2H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.24 (m, 1H), 0.93-0.76 (m, 2H), 0.62 (q, J=12 Hz, 1H).

5 Step G:

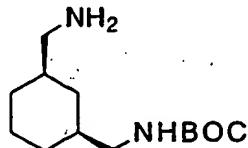


The intermediate prepared as described above (409 mg, 1.53 mmol) was combined with 10% Pd/C (80 mg) in methanol (12 mL). This mixture was stirred under a H₂ balloon for 6 h, then filtered through celite. The filter cake was washed with an additional 50 mL of methanol and the combined filtrates were concentrated. Flash chromatography (silica, 1.5% NH₄OH solution, 13.5% MeOH, 85% DCM) afforded the pure amine (264.1 mg). [a]²²D = -5.2° (c 0.78, CHCl₃).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 4.61 (br s, 1H), 2.93 (m, 2H), 2.50 (dd, J=6.4, 2.4 Hz, 2H), 1.80-1.66 (m, 4H), 1.50 (app br s, 2H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.25 (m, 2H), 0.79 (m, 2H), 0.52 (q, J=12.4 Hz, 1H).

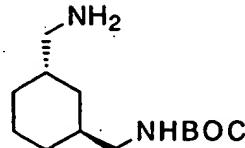
20

INTERMEDIATE 2c, 2d (trans and cis, racemic)



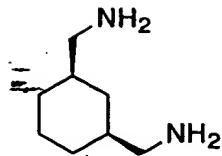
Racemic

and



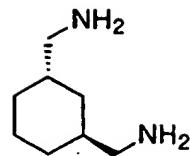
Racemic

43

Step A:

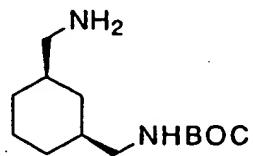
meso

and

C₂-symmetric

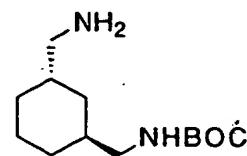
Commercially available 1,3-bis(aminomethyl)cyclohexane

- 5 (200 g, 1.41 mol), sold as a mixture of isomers, was dissolved in isopropanol (1 L) and treated with concentrated HCl (12 N, 240 mL, 2.88 mol). After the addition was complete the solvent was removed and the residue was crystallized from hot ~1:1 methanol/ethyl acetate. Material enhanced in the trans isomer crystallized first. Several
 10 recrystallizations of salt obtained from the mother liquor, however, furnished 76.4 g of 10:1 cis/trans diamine hydrochloride(determined by ¹H NMR). By checking crystals and ML's by ¹H NMR and following up with additional recrystallizations a small quantity of diamine enhanced in trans was also obtained (~1:8 cis/trans).
- 15 ¹H NMR trans isomer (CD₃OD, 400 MHz) δ 2.91 (dd, J=7.5, 1.1 Hz, 4H), 2.01 (m, 2H), 1.71 (m, 2H), 1.58 (app t, J=6Hz, 4H), 1.38 (m, 2H).
¹H NMR cis isomer (CD₃OD, 400 MHz) δ 2.86 (dd, J=13, 6.5 Hz, 2H), 2.79 (dd, J=13, 7.6 Hz, 2H), 1.90-1.82 (m, 3H), 1.74 (m, 2H), 1.58 (m, 1H), 1.38 (m, 1H), 0.99 (m, 2H), 0.79 (q, J=12 Hz, 1H).
- 20

Step B:

Racemic

and



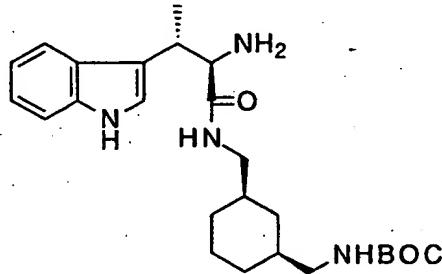
Racemic

- For cis compound: The meso diamine dihydrochloride prepared as described above (6.5 g, 30 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (75 mL) and NaOH (1.27 g, 31.7 mmol) was added. When all reagents were fully dissolved a solution of BOC₂O (2.68 g, 12.1 mmol) in *p*-dioxane (20 mL) was added via addition funnel dropwise over 1.25 h. After the

64

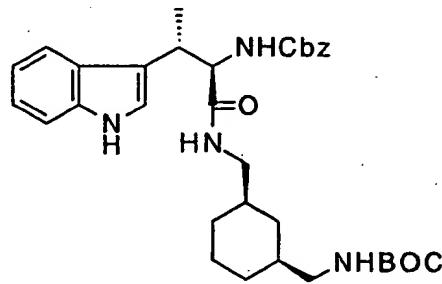
- addition the reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 3.5 h and then the solvents were evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in DCM (100 mL) and washed in turn with saturated NaHCO₃ solution (75 mL), water (75 mL) and brine (75 mL), dried over 5 Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to afford the product (2.94 g, 100%). The trans mono BOC compound was prepared in an identical fashion.
- Cis: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 4.60 (br s, 1H), 2.93 (m, 2H), 2.51 (m, 2H), 1.80-1.66 (m, 4H), 1.57 (m, 2H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.24 (m, 1H), 0.80 (m, 2H), 0.52 (q, J=12.1 Hz, 1H).
- 10 Trans: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ ESI-MS calc. for C₁₃H₂₆N₂O₂: 242; Found: 243 (M+H).

INTERMEDIATE 3



15

Step A:



20

To a mixture of (3*R*)-aminomethyl-(1*S*)-BOC-aminomethylcyclohexane (2a above, 1.46 g, 6.04 mmol), beta-methyl Trp (2.03 g, 6.04 mmol), and HOBt (1.47 g, 10.9 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) was added at 0° C EDC (2.08 g, 10.9 mmol). The reaction mixture was then permitted to warm to rt and stir overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with more DCM (150 mL) and washed in turn with 1 N HCl (100 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (100 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried over 25 Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to afford the product (2.94 g, 100%).

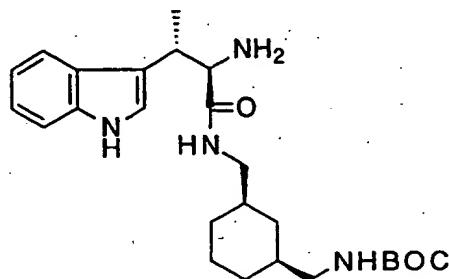
65

$MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated. Purification by MPLC (silica, 70% ethyl acetate/hexane) afforded 2.40 g (69%) of the product as a white solid.

ESI-MS calc. for $C_{33}H_{44}N_4O_5$: 576; Found: 577 ($M+H$).

5

Step B:



10

The intermediate from the previous step (2.40 g, 4.16 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (50 mL) and stirred under H_2 (g) in the presence of catalytic Pd/C (10%, 240 mg) for 1.25 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, the filter cake was washed with additional methanol and the combined filtrates were concentrated to give 1.82 g (99%) of the desired product.

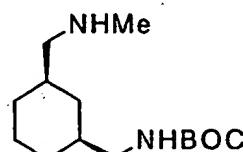
15

1H NMR ($CDCl_3$, 400 MHz) δ 8.76 (br s, 1H), 7.72 (d, $J=7.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.36 (d, $J=8.4$ Hz, 1H), 7.17 (app t, $J=8.4$ Hz, 1H), 7.11-6.97 (m, 2H), 4.68 (t, $J=5.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.76 (m, 2H), 3.12 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 2.86-2.78 (m, 2H), 1.90 (m, 4H), 1.69 (m, 2H), 1.59 (m, 1H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.33 (d, $J=6.8$ Hz, 3H), 1.19 (m, 2H), 0.71 (m, 2H), 0.37 (q, $J=12$ Hz, 1H).

20

ESI-MS calc. for $C_{25}H_{38}N_4O_3$: 442; Found: 443 ($M+H$).

INTERMEDIATE 4

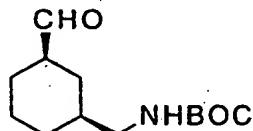


25

44

Step A:

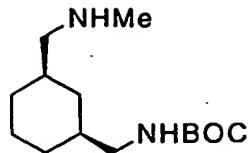
5 The pure (3S)-BOC-aminomethyl cyclohexane-(1R)-carboxylic acid (3.93 g, 15.3 mmol), prepared as described above, was combined with N-methyl-O-methyl-hydroxylamine hydrochloride (2.98 g, 30.6 mmol), HOBt (4.13 g, 30.6 mmol) and DIEA (5.90 mL, 33.6 mmol) in DCM (100 mL). The resulting solution was cooled to 0°C and treated
 10 with EDC (5.86 g, 30.6 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to rt and then stirred for 2h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (200 mL) and washed with saturated NaHCO₃ solution (2X100 mL), 1N HCl (2X100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to provide 4.52 g of
 15 crude product.

Step B:

20 The product from the previous step (1.93 g, 6.42 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous ether (150 mL), cooled to 0°C, and treated with 1.0 M LiAlH₄•2THF in toluene (8.03 mL, 8.03 mmol) dropwise over 5 min. After an additional 1 h, the reaction was quenched by dropwise addition of water until bubbling ceased. The reaction mixture was then washed with 1N HCl (2X100 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (100 mL) and brine (100 mL). The ethereal layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to afford the product (1.53 g, 99%) as an oil.

1H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 9.61 (d, J=2Hz, 1H), 4.63 (br s, 1H), 3.00 (m, 2H), 2.23 (m, 1H), 2.04-1.83 (m, 3H), 1.78 (m, 2H), 1.53-1.08 (m, 2H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 0.88 (m, 2H).

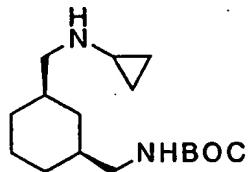
67

Step C:

- 5 The aldehyde prepared in the previous step (2.98 g, 12.4 mmol) was combined with methylamine hydrochloride (2.50 g, 37.0 mmol) and NaOAc (15.2 g, 185 mmol) in methanol (100 mL). After 15 min NaCNBH₃ (2.33 g, 37.0 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred overnight at rt. The solvent was then removed and the residue was dissolved in DCM (150 mL) and washed with saturated NaHCO₃ solution (2X100 mL), and brine (2X100 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. Flash chromatographic purification (silica, 1.5% NH₄OH solution, 13.5% methanol/DCM) afforded 778.4 mg of pure product.
- 10 15 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 4.61 (br s, 1H), 2.97 (m, 2H), 2.45 (m, 2H), 2.43 (s, 3H), 2.13 (br s, 2H), 1.78 (m, 4H), 1.49 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.27 (m, 1H), 0.88 (m, 2H), 0.59 (q, J=16 Hz, 1H).

INTERMEDIATE 5

20



- 25 In a similar fashion as described for the preparation of intermediate 4, the aldehyde used in that synthesis (intermediate 4, Step B, 124 mg, 0.516 mmol) was combined with cyclopropylamine (88.0 mg, 1.55 mmol) and acetic acid (dropwise addition until pH = 7) in methanol (5 mL). Then NaCNBH₃ (52 mg, 0.83 mmol) was added and the mixture was permitted to stir overnight at rt. The reaction mixture was then concentrated, diluted with DCM (25 mL) and washed with saturated NaHCO₃ solution (2X10 mL), and brine (2X10 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to afford the desired 2° amine as an oil (127.5 mg, 88%).
- 30

68

ESI-MS calc. for C₁₆H₃₀N₂O₂: 282; Found: 283 (M+H).

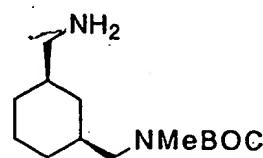
INTERMEDIATES 6-12

5 Intermediates 6 through 12 (shown in the below table) were prepared in the same fashion as described for either Intermediate 4 or Intermediate 5.

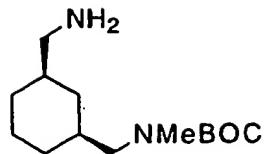
Intermed.	Structure	ESI-MS	Intermed.	Structure	ESI-MS
6		calc. for C ₁₉ H ₃₆ N ₂ O 4: 356 Found: 357 (M+H)	10		calc. for C ₁₆ H ₂₉ N ₂ O 2- F3: 338 Found: 339 (M+H)
7		calc. for C ₁₆ H ₃₂ N ₂ O 2: 284 Found: 285 (M+H)	11		
8		calc. for C ₁₇ H ₃₄ N ₂ O 2: 298 Found: 299 (M+H)	12		
9		calc. for C ₁₈ H ₃₆ N ₂ O 2: 312 Found: 313 (M+H)			

INTERMEDIATE 13

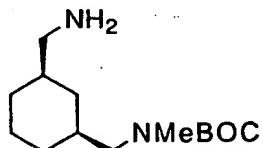
10.



49

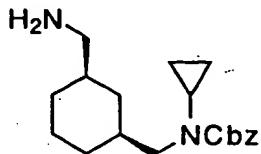
Step A:

- 5 (3*R*)-Azidomethyl-(1*S*)-BOC-aminomethylcyclohexane (275 mg, 1.03 mmol), prepared as described above, was dissolved in THF (5 mL), cooled to 0°C and treated with 0.5 M KHMDS in toluene (4.1 mL, 2.1 mmol) dropwise over 3 min. After an additional 15 min, methyl iodide (128 mL, 2.05 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was permitted
10 to warm to rt and stir for 1.3 h. The reaction mixture was then diluted with ethyl acetate (50 mL) and washed with 1N HCl (40 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (40 mL) and brine (40 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to afford 295 mg of product as an oil.
15 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 3.12 (m, 2H), 3.03 (m, 2H), 2.82 (br s, 3H), 1.82-1.50 (m, 6H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.22 (m, 1H), 0.83 (m, 2H), 0.62 (br q, J=12 Hz, 1H).

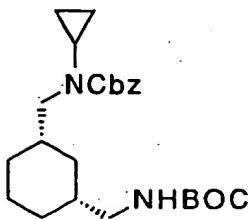
20 Step B:

- The product from the previous step (291 mg, 1.03 mmol) was combined with 10% Pd/C (60 mg) in methanol (10 mL) and stirred under H₂ (g), introduced via balloon, overnight. The reaction mixture was
25 then filtered through celite and the filtercake was washed with additional methanol (30 mL). The combined filtrates were concentrated to afford 256.6 mg of crude product.
 ESI-MS calc. for C₁₄H₂₈N₂O₂: 256; Found: 257 (M+H).

70

INTERMEDIATE 14Step A:

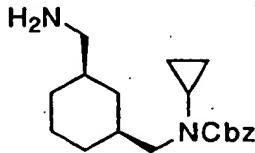
5



Intermediate 12 (106 mg, 0.374 mmol), prepared as described above, was combined with DIEA (91 mL, 0.52 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) and the resulting solution was cooled to 0°C and treated with Cbz-Cl (61 mL, 0.43 mmol) dropwise. The reaction mixture was warmed to rt and stirred for 2h. To hydrolyze the remaining Cbz-Cl, water (5 mL) and DMAP (~10 mg) were added and the mixture was stirred for an additional 0.5 h. The reaction mixture was then diluted with DCM (40 mL) and washed with 1 N HCl (40 mL), saturated NaHCO_3 solution (40 mL) and brine (40 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated to afford 142.3 mg of product.

Step B:

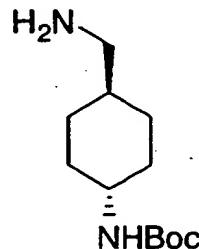
20



The product of the previous reaction (142 mg, 0.341 mmol) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (10 mL) and HCl (g) was bubbled through the resulting solution for 3-4 min. The solvent was removed to give 117.5 mg of product.

25 ^1H NMR (CD_3OD , 300 MHz) δ 7.37 (m, 5H), 5.12 (s, 2H), 3.17 (d, $J=7.5$ Hz, 2H), 2.75 (d, $J=6.6$ Hz, 2H), 2.60 (m, 1H), 1.90-1.55 (m, 7H), 1.29 (m, 2H), 0.92 (m, 2H), 0.78 (m, 1H), 0.63 (m, 2H).

71

INTERMEDIATE 15N-(4-tertbutoxycarbonylamino)cyclohexylmethyl amine

5

Step 1: N-(trans-4-Carboxycyclohexylmethyl)phthalimide

N-carboethoxyphthalimide (21.9 g, 0.10 mol), *trans*-4-(aminomethyl)cyclohexane carboxylic acid (15.7 g, 0.10 mol) and triethylamine (14 mL) were stirred in 100 mL THF and the mixture refluxed 18 hours. The nearly clear solution was poured into 400 ml water containing 10 mL glac. HOAc with rapid stirring and the precipitated product collected by suction and dried in a vacuum oven at 80°C, mp 190-192°.

15

Step 2: N-(trans-4-Isocyanato-cyclohexylmethyl)phthalimide

The product from the previous step was stirred in 200 ml CCl₄ containing 10 mL SOCl₂ and the mixture refluxed under a drying tube until the solution remained clear on cooling and gas evolution ceased. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to 100 ml and treated with 14.0 mL trimethylsilyl azide at reflux for 18 hours. The resulting solution was concentrated to give the crude title isocyanate.

Step 3: N-(4-tertbutoxycarbonylamino)cyclohexylmethyl phthalimide

The crude product from example 1, step 2 was treated with a solution of lithium tert butoxide in THF for 2 hours at room temperature to give a dark solution which was diluted with aqueous acetic acid and ice to precipitate the crude product which is recrystallized from 1-chlorobutane to give beige needles of the title urethane, mp. 163-165°.

30

72

Step 4: N-(4-tertbutoxycarbonylamino)cyclohexylmethyl amine

The above urethane phthalimide was treated with 1 equivalent anhydrous hydrazine in isopropanol for 18 hours at room temperature followed by 4 hours reflux. The mixture was concentrated, 5 diluted with cold aqueous acetic acid and filtered to remove phthalazinedione. The aqueous layer was basified with NaOH followed by extraction with ethyl acetate, drying, and evaporation to afford the desired product Intermediate 1 as a solid.

10

INTERMEDIATE 16

Some of the instant compounds can be prepared employing solid phase methodology, the general procedure for which is described below:

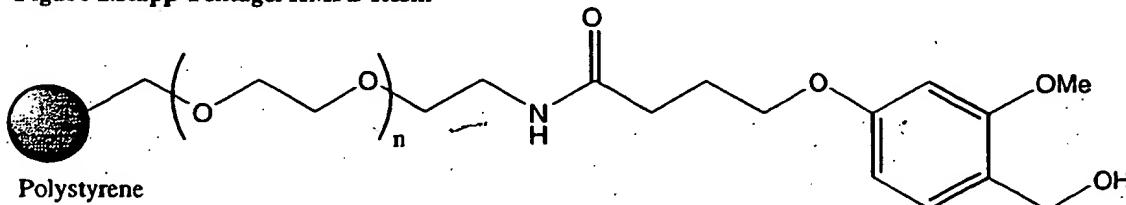
Preparation of resin-bound diamine or amino-alcohol:

15

Transferred 1.8 g of Rapp Tentagel HMPB resin (0.20 mmol/g, see Figure 1) to a fritted tube and washed with 30 mL of 1:1 THF/CH₂Cl₂. Added 9 mL of a 0.75M solution of DIEA in THF/CH₂Cl₂. Added 9 mL of a 0.75M solution of *p*-nitrophenylchloroformate in THF/CH₂Cl₂. Agitated for 6 hours. Drained the tube and washed the 20 resin with 2x30 mL of THF/CH₂Cl₂. Added 18 mL of a 0.25M DMF solution of a 1:1 mixture of diamine or amino-alcohol (see Table 1) and DIEA and agitated for 16 hours. Drained the tube and washed the resin with 4x20 mL of DMF.

25

Figure 1.Rapp Tentagel HMPB Resin



30

Transferred 25 mg of diamine or amino-alcohol loaded resin (see Figure 2 and Table 1) into a fritted tube. Washed the resin with 2x1.5 mL of DMF. Added 250 μ L of a 0.52M solution of Fmoc-(RS,SR)-b-methyltryptophan in DMF. Added 250 μ L of a 0.52M solution of DIC/3% DMAP in DMF. Agitated the reaction vessel for 3 hours. Drained the

73

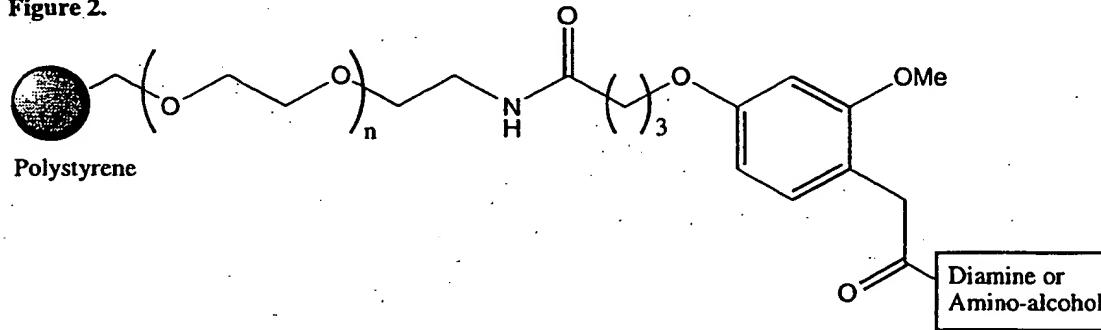
tube and washed the resin with 2x1.5 mL of DMF and repeated the acylation. Drained the tube and washed the resin with 3x1.5mL of DMF. Added 500 μ L of 20% piperidine in DMF and agitated for 30 minutes.

5 Drained and washed the resin with 2x1.5 mL each of DMF and 1:1 THF/CH₂Cl₂. Added 250 μ L of a 0.5M solution of DIEA in THF/CH₂Cl₂. Added 250 μ L of a 0.5M solution of *p*-nitrophenylchloroformate in THF/CH₂Cl₂. Agitated for 30 minutes. Drained the tube and washed the resin with 2x1.5 mL of THF/CH₂Cl₂. Added 500 μ L of a 0.25M solution of 1:1 4-(2-keto-1-benzimidazolinyl)piperidine/DIEA in DMF and agitated

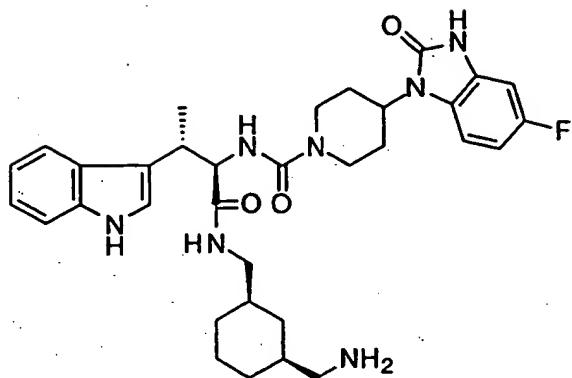
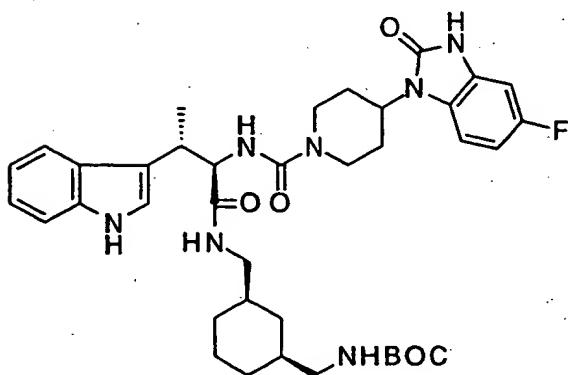
10 for 20 minutes. Drained the tube, and washed the resin with 3x1.5 mL each of DMF, THF/CH₂Cl₂, THF, CH₂Cl₂, isopropanol, CH₂Cl₂, and glacial acetic acid. Added 1 mL of glacial acetic acid under nitrogen, and heated to 40 °C for 21.5 hours to release the compound from the resin.

15 Drained the tube, collecting the solution. Lyophilized this solution to afford the product. Mass Spectroscopy confirms the presence of the desired product (See Table II below).

Figure 2.

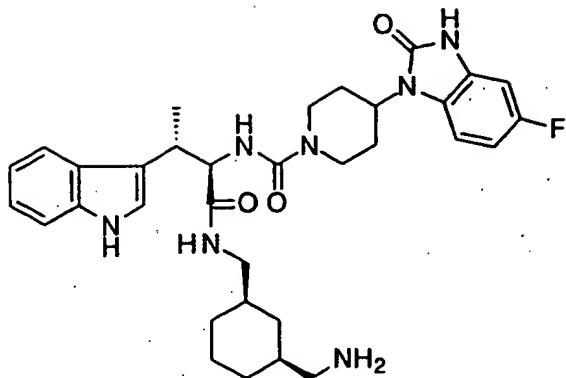


74

EXAMPLE 15 Step A:

Intermediate 3 prepared as described above (100 mg, 0.226 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (10 mL) and treated with disuccidimidyl carbonate (DSC, 58.0 mg, 0.237 mmol) and DIEA (0.250 mL, 1.35 mmol). After about 40 min. 4-(fluoro-2-keto-1-benzimidazolinyl)-piperidine hydrochloride (64 mg, 0.27 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was allowed to stir at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was then diluted with DCM (40 mL) and washed with 1 N HCl (2X30 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (30 mL) and brine (30 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by MPLC (silica, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate) to afford 110 mg of pure product.

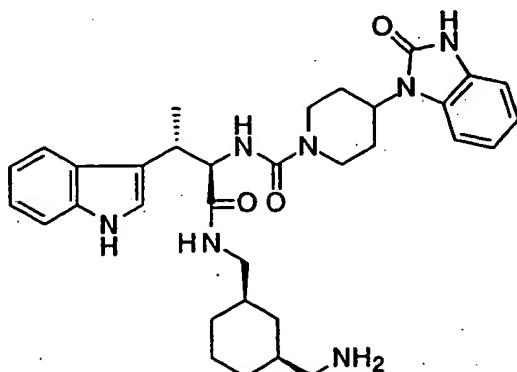
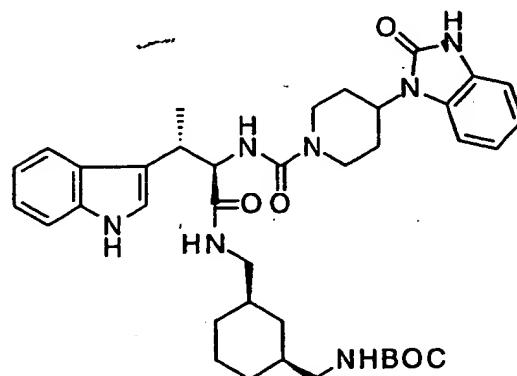
75

Step B:

The product from the previous step (109 mg, 0.155 mmol) was dissolved
 5 in ethyl acetate (15 mL) and HCl gas was bubbled through the solution
 for 2 min. The reaction mixture was concentrated to give the product as
 its HCl salt.

ESI-MS calc. for C₃₃H₄₂N₇O₃F: 603; Found 604 (M+H).

10

EXAMPLE 2Step A:

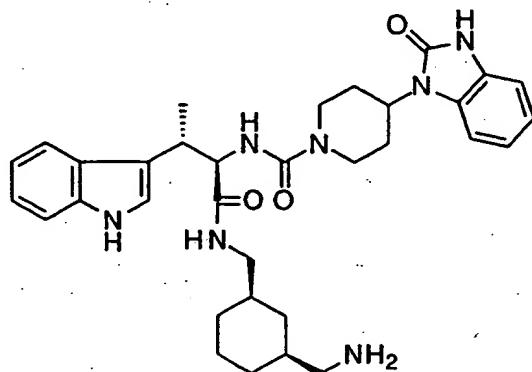
15

76

Carboxylic acid 1 (82.1 mg, 0.178 mmol), prepared as described above, was combined with (3*R*)-aminomethyl-(1*S*)-BOC-aminomethylcyclohexane (2a above, 43.1 mg, 0.178 mmol), and HOBT (34.5 mg, 0.267 mmol) in DCM (5 mL). The mixture was cooled to 0°C
 5 and EDC (51.2 mg, 0.267 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to rt and stir for 2.5 h. Dilution with DCM (40 mL) was followed by washing with 1 N HCl (20 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (20 mL) and brine (20 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to yield an oil which was purified by MPLC
 10 (silica, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate) to afford a white solid (105.0 mg, 86%).

Step B:

15

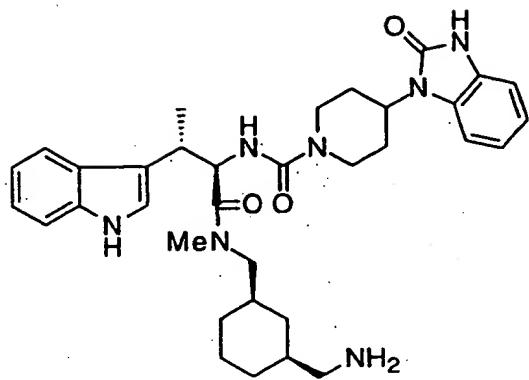
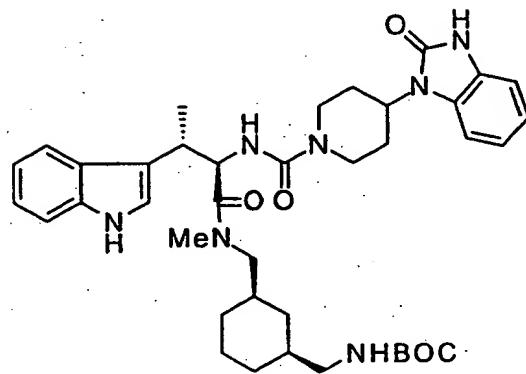


The intermediate prepared in the previous step (90 mg, 0.13 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (5 mL) and treated with TFA (5 mL). After 0.5 h at rt the reaction mixture was concentrated and acetic acid (5 mL) was
 20 added. The solution was subjected to lyophilization to give the product as a pink/white solid (acetic acid salt).

¹H NMR (CD₃OD, 400 MHz) δ 7.67 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (t, J=6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.32 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 7.16 (m, 2H), 7.11-6.99 (m, 4H), 4.52 (d, J=9.2 Hz, 1H), 4.47 (m, 1H), 4.22 (m, 2H), 3.56 (m, 1H), 2.98 (m, 3H), 2.69 (m, 1H), 2.51 (m, 2H), 2.45-2.24 (m, 2H), 1.99 (s, 2H), 1.79 (m, 2H), 1.66 (m, 2H), 4.53 (d, J=9.5 Hz, 3H), 1.42-1.25 (m, 3H), 1.11 (m, 2H), 0.68 (dq, J=12, 3.2 Hz, 1H), 0.51 (dq, J=12, 3.2 Hz, 1H), 0.19 (q, J=12 Hz, 1H).

ESI-MS calc. for C₃₃H₄₃N₇O₃: 585; Found: 586 (M+H).

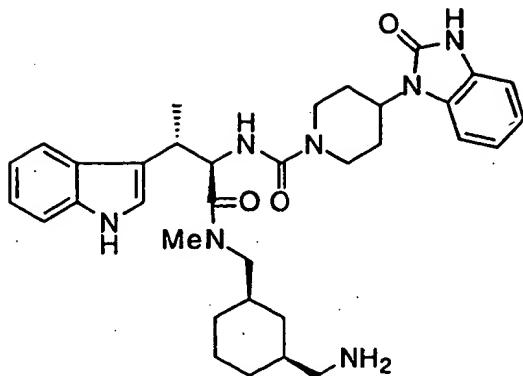
77

EXAMPLE 35 Step A:

Carboxylic acid 1 (77.2 mg, 0.167 mmol), prepared as described above, was combined with (3*R*)-aminomethyl-(1*S*)-BOC-N-methyl-
 10 aminomethylcyclohexane (33 mg, 0.13 mmol), prepared as described above, and HOBT (31 mg, 0.23 mmol) in DCM (5 mL). The mixture was cooled to 0°C and EDC (46 mg, 0.23 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to rt and stir overnight. Dilution with DCM (40 mL) was followed by washing with 1 N HCl (20 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (20 mL) and brine (20 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to yield an oil which was purified by MPLC (silica, 6.5% methanol/ethyl acetate) to afford a white solid (69.4 mg).

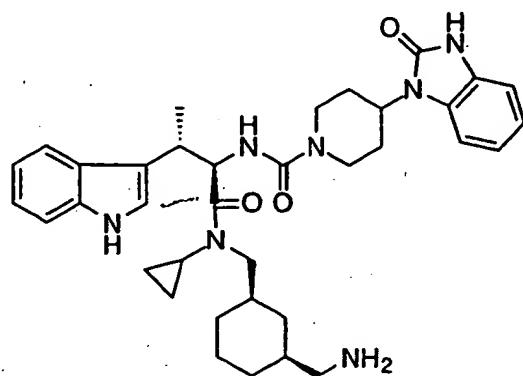
ESI-MS calc. for C₃₉H₅₃N₇O₅: 699; Found: 700 (M+H).

78

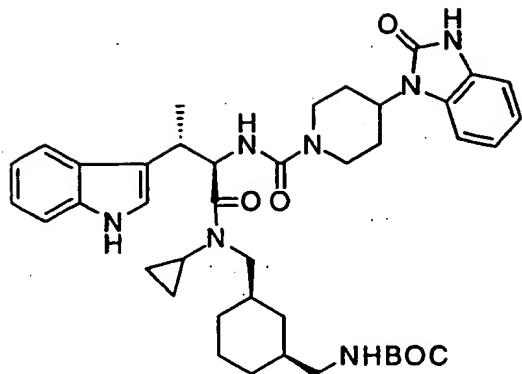
Step B:

- 5 The intermediate from the previous step (69 mg, 0.099 mmol) was dissolved in 5:1 ethyl acetate/DCM (10 mL) and HCl (g) was bubbled through the resulting solution for 3-4 min. The reaction mixture was concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica, 1.2% conc. NH₄OH, 10.8% methanol/DCM to 1.5% conc. NH₄OH, 10.8% methanol/DCM, gradient). The resulting pure free base was converted to its HCl salt by adding 1 equivalent concentrated HCl to a methanolic solution of the free base and concentrating.
- ESI-MS calc. for C₃₄H₄₅N₇O₃: 599; Found: 600 (M+H).

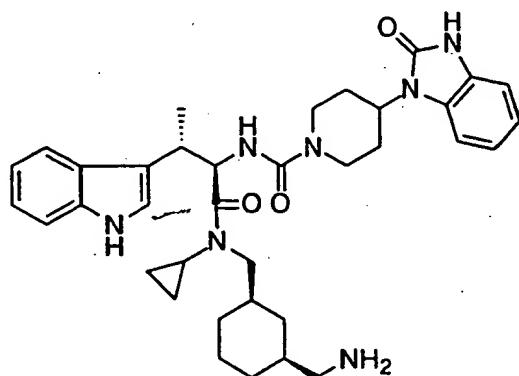
15

EXAMPLE 4

79

Step A:

- 5 Secondary amine intermediate 5 (127 mg, 0.450 mmol), prepared as described above was combined with carboxylic acid intermediate 1 (228 mg, 0.495 mmol), PyBroP (241 mg, 0.518 mmol) and DIEA (235 mL, 1.35 mmol) in DCM (10 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was then diluted with DCM (80 mL) and washed with 1 N HCl (2X75 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (75 mL) and brine (75 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by MPLC (silica, 5% methanol/ethyl acetate), giving 178 mg of the product as a white solid.
- 10 15 Step B:



- 20 The product of the previous reaction (169.9 mg, 0.234 mmol) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (10 mL) and HCl (g) was bubbled through the

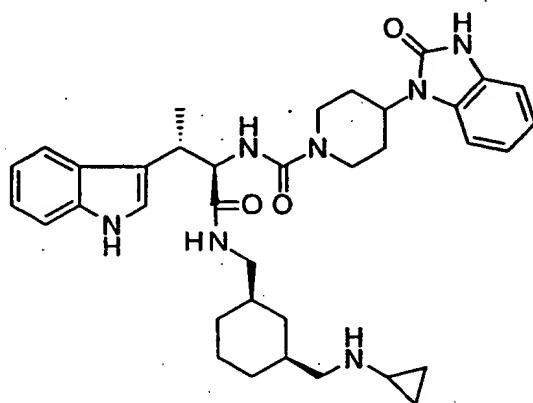
80

resulting solution for 3-4 min. The solvent was evaporated to give 161.9 mg of product as a white solid.

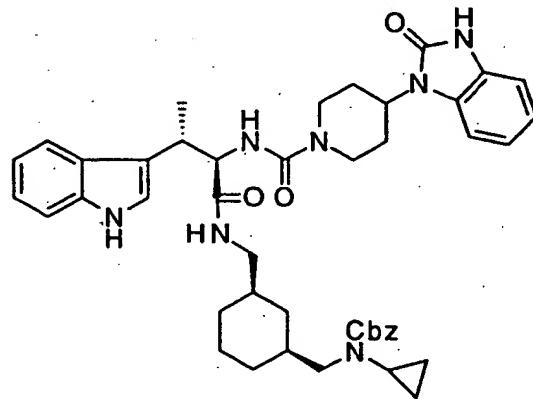
ESI-MS calc. for C₃₆H₄₇N₇O₃: 625; Found: 626 (M+H).

5

EXAMPLE 5



Step A:

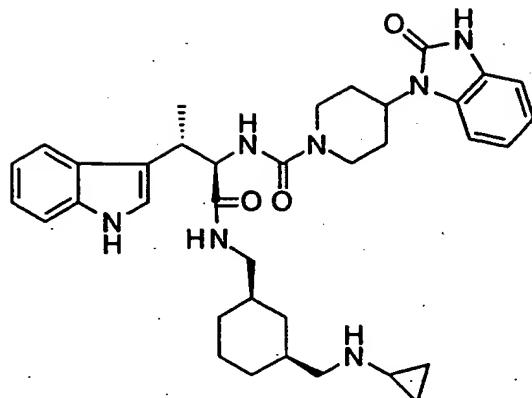


10

Intermediate amine 14 (117 mg, 0.332 mmol) was combined with intermediate carboxylic acid 1 (168 mg, 0.365 mmol), HOBr (81 mg, 0.60 mmol), DIEA (104 mL, 0.598 mmol) and EDC (115 mg, 0.598 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) and stirred overnight at rt. The reaction mixture was then diluted with DCM (50 mL) and washed with 1 N HCl (40 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ solution (40 mL) and brine (40 mL). The organic layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by MPLC (silica, 7.5% methanol/ethyl acetate) to afford 195.4 mg of product.

20

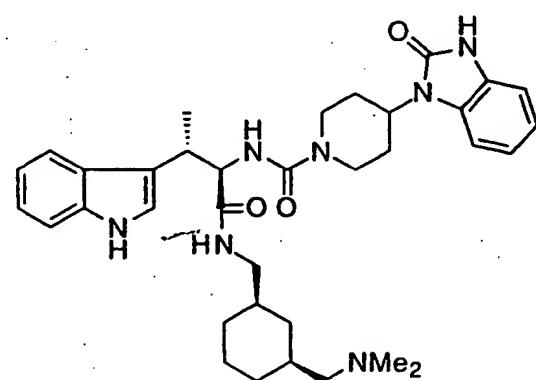
87

Step B:

The product of the previous reaction (165 mg, 0.207 mmol) was combined
 5 with 20% Pd(OH)₂/C (30 mg) and ethanol (10 mL) and stirred under H₂
 (g) for 3.5 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and
 concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography
 (silica, 1% conc NH₄OH, 9% methanol/DCM) to give the pure product,
 which was converted to its HCl salt by addition of concentrated HCl
 10 solution (9mL) to a methanolic (5 mL) solution of the free base, then
 removal of the solvent under reduced pressure.
 ESI-MS calc. for C₃₆H₄₇N₇O₃: 625; Found: 626 (M+H).

EXAMPLE 6

15



The primary amine product from example 2 above (145 mg,
 0.233 mmol) was combined with 37% aqueous formaldehyde (95 mg, 1.2
 20 mmol) and NaOAc (95.6 mg, 1.17 mmol) in methanol (5 mL). After 15

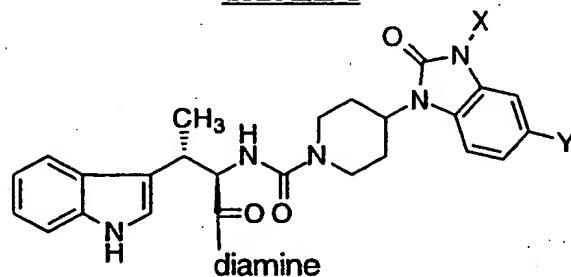
32

minutes NaCNBH₃ (24 mg, 0.37 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica, 1.5% conc NH₄OH, 13.5% methanol/DCM), giving, after adding 5 concentrated HCl solution (19 mL) and concentrating again, 112.9 mg of the HCl salt.

ESI-MS calc. for C₃₅H₄₇N₇O₃: 613; Found 614 (M+H).

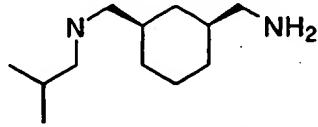
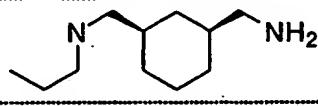
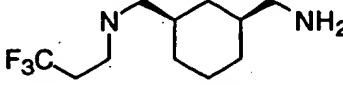
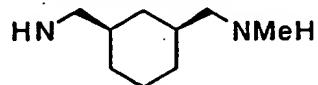
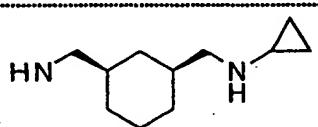
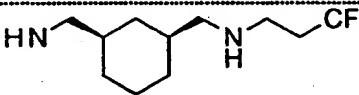
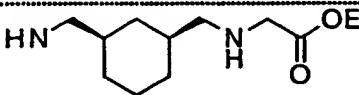
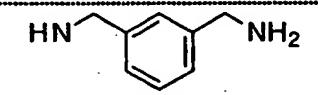
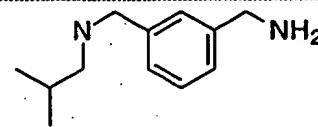
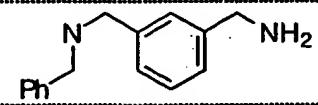
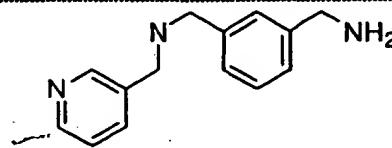
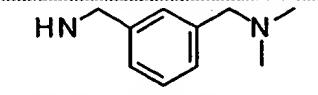
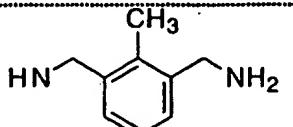
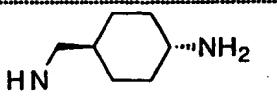
10 The examples listed in Table I below were prepared using the same protocols as for the examples (1-6) listed above.

TABLE I



Example	X	Y	diamine	MF ESI-MS (M+H)
7	H	H	HN NH ₂ trans	C ₃₃ H ₄₃ N ₇ O ₃ 586
8	H	H	HN NH ₂ cis	C ₃₃ H ₄₃ N ₇ O ₃ 586
9	H	H	HN NH ₂	C ₃₃ H ₄₃ N ₇ O ₃ 586
10	H	H		C ₃₈ H ₅₃ N ₇ O ₃ 656
11	H	H		C ₃₉ H ₅₃ N ₇ O ₅ 700

83

12	H	H		C ₃₇ H ₅₁ N ₇ O ₃ 642
13	H	H		C ₃₆ H ₄₉ N ₇ O ₃ 628
14	H	H		C ₃₆ H ₄₆ N ₇ O ₃ F ₃ 682
15	H	H		C ₃₄ H ₄₅ N ₇ O ₃ 600
16	H	H		C ₃₆ H ₄₇ N ₇ O ₃ 626
17	H	H		C ₃₆ H ₄₆ N ₇ O ₃ F ₃ 682
18	H	H		C ₃₇ H ₄₉ N ₇ O ₅ 672
19	H	H		C ₃₃ H ₃₇ N ₇ O ₃ 580
20	H	H		C ₃₇ H ₄₅ N ₇ O ₃ 636
21	H	H		C ₄₀ H ₄₃ N ₇ O ₃ 670
22	H	H		C ₃₉ H ₄₃ N ₈ O ₃
23	H	H		C ₃₅ H ₄₁ N ₇ O ₃ 608
24	H	H		C ₃₄ H ₃₉ N ₇ O ₃ 594
25	H	H		C ₃₂ H ₄₁ N ₇ O ₃ 572

84

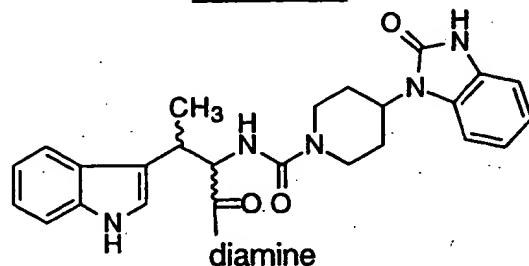
26	H	H		C33H43N7O3 586
27	H	H		C36H49N7O3 628
28	H	H		C34H44N7O3 599
29	H	H		C34H44N7O3 599
30	H	H		C34H43N7O5 630
31	H	H		C34H43N7O3 598
32	H	H		
33	H	Cl		C33H42ClN7O3 621
34	ethyl	H		C35H47N7O3 614
35	H	F		C33H36FN7O3 598
36	ethyl	H		C35H41N7O3 608
37	H	H		
38	H	H		
39	H	H		

The compounds shown in Table II, containing a variety of representative diamine units appended to the Trp, were prepared

85

according to the above established procedures as exemplified in Examples 1 & 2 in conjunction with Intermediate 17 and for preparing the various required intermediates.

5

TABLE II

Example	diamine	MF ESI-MS (M+H) C _x H _y N _z O _w
40		C ₃₃ H ₄₃ N ₇ O ₃ 586
41		C ₃₃ H ₄₃ N ₇ O ₃ 586
42		C ₃₅ H ₄₇ N ₇ O ₃ 614
43		C ₃₂ H ₄₁ N ₇ O ₃ 572
44		C ₃₅ H ₄₅ N ₇ O ₅ 644
45		C ₃₅ H ₄₅ N ₇ O ₅ 644

Biological Assays

10 The ability of compounds of the present invention to act as somatostatin agonist can be determined by the following *in vitro* assays, which is disclosed in Rens-Domiano, et al., Pharmacological Properties of Two Cloned Somatostatin Receptors, *Mol. Pharm.*, 42:28-34 (1992) and incorporated herein.

15

Receptor Expression Constructs -

86

Mammalian expression vectors containing full length coding sequences for hSSTR1-5 were constructed as follows: Fragments of genomic DNA carrying the various human somatostatin receptors were inserted into the multiple cloning site of pcDNA3 (Invitrogen). The 5 fragments used were a 1.5-kb *PstI-XmnI* fragment for hSSTR1, 1.7-kb *BamHI-HindIII* fragment for hSSTR2, 2.0-kb *NcoI-HindIII* fragment for hSSTR3, a 1.4-kb *NheI-NdeI* fragment for hSSTR4, and a 3.2-kb *XbaI-EcoRI* fragment for hSSTR5.

10 Transfection -

CHO-K1 cells were obtained from American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) and grown in alpha-MEM containing 10% fetal calf serum. Cells were stably transfected with DNA for all 5 hSSTRs using lipofectamine. Neomycin resistant clones were selected and maintained 15 in medium containing G418 (400 µg/ml).

Receptor binding assay.

Cells were harvested 72 hr after transfection to 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.8, containing 1 mM EGTA, 5 mM MgCl₂, 10 µg/ml leupeptin, 20 10 µg/ml pepstatin, 200 µg/ml bacitracin, and 0.5 µg/ml aprotinin (buffer 1) and were centrifuged at 24,000 x g for 7 min at 4°. The pellet was homogenized in buffer 1 using a Brinkman Polytron (setting 2.5, 30 sec). The homogenate was then centrifuged at 48,000 µg for 20 min at 4°C. The pellet was homogenized in buffer 1 and the membranes were used 25 in the radioligand binding assay. Cell membranes (approximately 10 µg of protein) were incubated with ¹²⁵I-Tyr¹¹-somatostatin (0.2 nM; specific activity, 2000 Ci/mmol; NEN) in the presence or absence of competing peptides, in a final volume of 200 µl, for 30 min at 25°. Nonspecific binding was defined as the radioactivity remaining bound in the 30 presence of 100 nM somastastatin. The binding reaction was terminated by the addition of ice-cold 50 nM Tris-HCl buffer, pH 7.8, and rapid filtration with 12 ml of ice-cold Tris HCl buffer, and the bound radioactivity was counted in a gamma scintillation spectrophotometer (80% efficiency). Data from radioligand binding studies were used to 35 generate inhibition curves. IC₅₀ values were obtained from curve-fitting

performed with the mathematical modeling program FITCOMP, available through the National Institutes of Health-sponsored PROPHET System.

5 Inhibition of forskolin-stimulated cAMP accumulation.

Cells used for cAMP accumulation studies were subcultured in 12-well culture plates. COS-7 cells were transfected 72 hr before the experiments. Culture medium was removed from the wells and replaced with 500 µl of fresh medium containing 0.5 mM 10 isobutylmethylxanthine. Cells were incubated for 20 min at 37°. Medium was then removed and replaced with fresh medium containing 0.5 mM isobutylmethylxanthine, with or without 10 µM forskolin and various concentrations of test compound. Cells were incubated for 30 min at 37°. Medium was then removed, and cells were sonicated in the wells in 500 µL of 1 N HCl and frozen for subsequent determination of 15 cAMP content by radioimmunassay. Samples were thawed and diluted in cAMP radioimmunassay buffer before analysis of cAMP content using the commercially available assay kit from NEW/DuPont (Wilmington, DE).

20 Inhibition of growth hormone release.

Functional activity of the various compounds was evaluated by quantitating release of growth hormone secretion from primary cultures of rat anterior pituitary cells. Cells were isolated from rat pituitaries by enzymatic digestion with 0.2% collagenase and 0.2% 25 hyaluronidase in Hank's balanced salt solution. The cells were suspended in culture medium and adjusted to a concentration of 1.5 x 10⁵ cells per milliliter, and 1.0 ml of this suspension was placed in each well of a 24-well tray. Cells were maintained in a humidified 5% CO₂-95% air atmosphere at 37°C for 3 to 4 days. The culture medium 30 consisted of Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium containing 0.37% NaHCO₃, 10% horse serum, 2.5% fetal bovine serum, 1% nonessential amino acids, 1% glutamine, 1% nystatin, and 0.1% gentamycin. Before testing compounds for their capacity to inhibit GH release, cells were washed twice 1.5 hours before and once more immediately before the 35 start of the experiment with the above culture medium containing 25

88

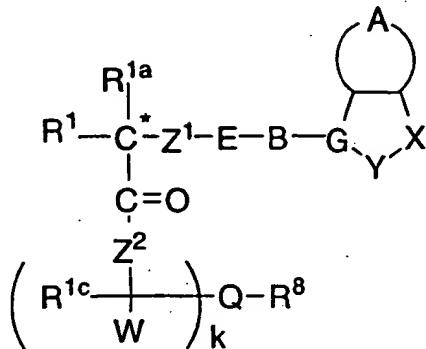
mM Hepes (pH 7.4). The compounds of the instant invention were tested in quadruplicate by adding them in 1 ml of fresh medium to each well and incubating them at 37°C for 15 min. After incubation, the medium was removed and centrifuged at 2000g for 15 min to remove any cellular material. The supernatant fluid was removed and assayed for GH by radioimmunoassay.

The compounds of this invention were found to inhibit the binding of somatostatin to its receptor at an IC₅₀ of about 30 pM to about 3 μM.

89

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound represented by formula I:



I

5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof, wherein

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of: C₁-10alkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁-6alkyl)-, C₃-7cycloalkyl(C₁-6alkyl)-, C₁-5alkyl-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, aryl(C₀-5 alkyl)-K-(C₁-5alkyl)-, and C₃-7cycloalkyl(C₀-5alkyl)-K-(C₁-5alkyl)-,

10 wherein K is -O-, -S(O)_m-, -N(R²)C(O)-, -C(O)N(R²)-, -CR²=CR²- or -C≡C-,

the alkyl portions of which are optionally substituted with by 1 to 5 halogen groups, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} groups or C(O)OR^{2a},

15 and wherein aryl is selected from the group consisting of: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindolyl, pyridyl, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, thiazolyl and benzimidazolyl, said aryl groups being unsubstituted or substituted with 1 to 3 C₁-6 alkyl or halo groups, 1 to 2 -OR² groups, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 -CF₃ groups, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

R² is selected from the group consisting of: H, C₁-8alkyl,

90

-(CH₂)_t-aryl and C₃-7cycloalkyl, and where two R² groups are present, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-C₈ ring, optionally interrupted by O, S or NR^{3a}, in which R^{3a} is H or C₁-6alkyl optionally substituted by OH;

5

t is an integer from 0 to 3;

and when R² is other than H, R² is optionally substituted with 1 to 5 halogen groups, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} groups or C(O)OR^{2a},

10

R^{2a} is H or C₁-3 alkyl optionally substituted by OH;

m is 0, 1 or 2;

15

R^{1a} is H or C₁-3alkyl;

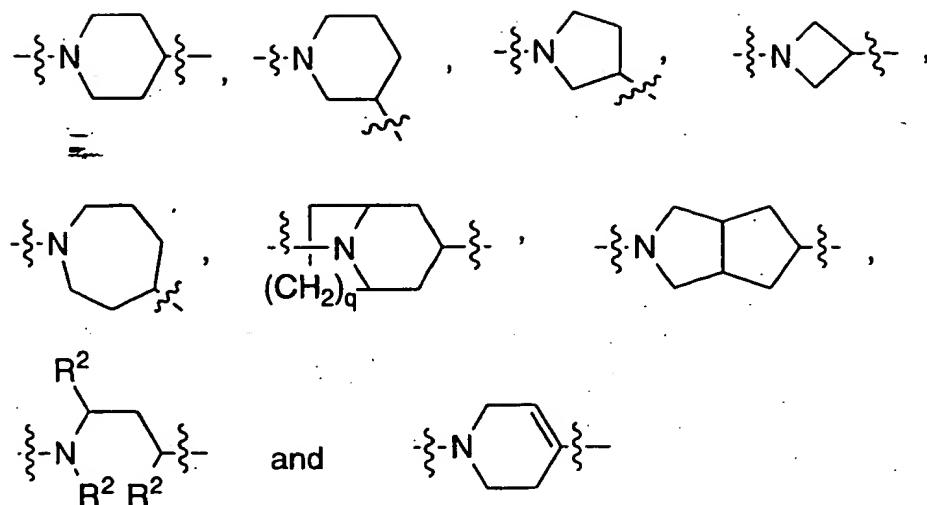
Z¹ is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂- and -NR^{2a};

20 E is selected from the group consisting of -SO₂-, -C(O)-, -CO(C(R²)₂)_n-, -C(=N-CN)-, -C(=N-NO₂)- and -C(=N-SO₂N(R²)₂)-;

n is an integer from 0 to 3;

25 B is selected from the group consisting of:

91



where attachment points are indicated by lines $(\{\})$ and q is 0, 1, 2 or 3, said group being optionally substituted by C₁₋₆alkyl, and the R² and

- 5 (CH₂)_q groups are optionally substituted as described above;



represents an aromatic or non-aromatic 5-6 membered ring structure wherein:

- 10 G is N, CH or C;

Y is -C(O)-, -SO₂-, -C(OR¹¹)=, -C(SR¹¹)=, -C(NR¹¹)=, =N-, -N(R¹¹)-, =NC(O)- or -C(R¹¹)₂-;

- 15 and

X is -N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-, -O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;

- 20 R¹¹ is H, C₁₋₈alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)₂-heteroaryl,

92

$-(CH_2)_pN(R^2)SO_2C_1\text{-}4\text{alkyl}$, $-(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R^2)_2$ or $-(CH_2)_pC(O)OR^2$,
 wherein heteroaryl is selected from tetrazolyl, oxadiazolyl, imidazolyl
 and triazolyl, said heteroaryl being optionally substituted with R^2 , OR^2 ,
 CF_3 or $N(R^2)_2$ and where p is 0-3;

5



- A is a 5-10 membered fused aryl or heteroaryl group having 1-4 heteroatoms selected from O, S and N, or a 5-10 membered cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group having 1-3 heteroatoms selected from O, S and N, said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group being
 10 optionally substituted with 1-3 $C_1\text{-}6\text{alkyl}$ or halo groups, $-OR^2$, $N(R^2)_2$, methylenedioxy, $-S(O)_mR^2$, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-N(R^2)C(O)(R^2)$, $-C(O)OR^2$, $-C(O)N(R^2)_2$, 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, $-SO_2N(R^2)_2$, $-N(R^2)SO_2$ phenyl, $-N(R^2)C(O)N(R^2)_2$ or $-N(R^2)SO_2R^2$;

- 15 Z^2 is selected from the group consisting of $-O-$, $-CH_2-$, $-CHR^{2b}-$ and $-NR^{2b}-$,

wherein R^{2b} is selected from the group consisting of: H, $C_1\text{-}8\text{alkyl}$, $-(CH_2)_t\text{-aryl}$, $-(CH_2)_nCO_2R^2$, $-(CH_2)_nCON(R^2)_2$ and $-(CH_2)_nOR^2$, and when Z^2 is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to R^{1c} , Q or
 20 W to form a C5-8 ring, which is optionally interrupted by O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^{2a} ;

R^{1c} is selected from the group consisting of: H, $-(CH_2)_qSR^2$, $-(CH_2)_qOR^2$ and $C_1\text{-}8\text{alkyl}$;

25

- W is selected from the group consisting of: H, $C_1\text{-}8\text{alkyl}$, $(CH_2)_t\text{-aryl}$, $-(CH_2)_qC(O)OR^2$, $-(CH_2)_qOR^2$, $-(CH_2)_qOC(O)R^2$, $-(CH_2)_qC(O)R^2$, $-(CH_2)_qC(O)(CH_2)_t\text{-aryl}$, $-(CH_2)_qC(O)N(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)C(O)R^2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)SO_2R^2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)C(O)N(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_qOC(O)N(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)C(O)OR^2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)SO_2N(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_qS(O)_mR^2$ and $-(CH_2)_t\text{-heteroaryl}$, the heteroaryl portion of which is selected from: tetrazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl and pyrazinyl, optionally substituted with R^2 , $N(R^2)_2$ or OR^2 ,

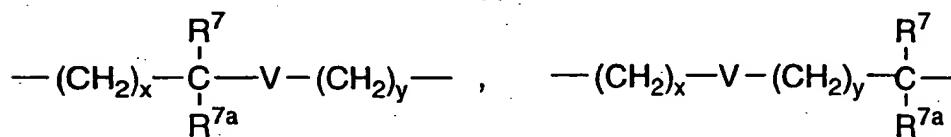
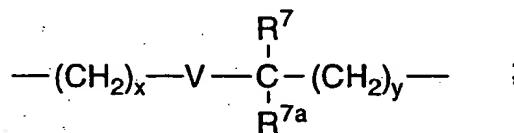
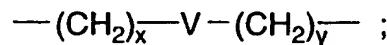
93

and when R² is other than H, said R², (CH₂)_q and the (CH₂)_t portions of W are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁₋₄alkyl, OR^{2a}, C(O)OR^{2a} or 1-3 halo groups, and

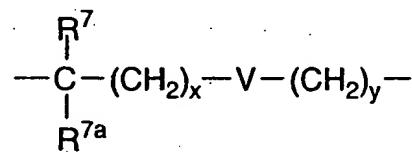
the aryl and heteroaryl portions of W being optionally substituted
5 with 1 to 3 halo groups, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁₋₄alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

k is 0 or 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to Z²;

10 Q represents a member selected from the group consisting of:



and



15 where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6;

V is an aromatic 6-12 membered mono- or bicyclic ring system or a non-aromatic 3-12 membered mono- or bicyclic ring system, optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R² groups, 1 to 3 halo groups, -OR², -CON(R²)₂,
20 -C(O)OR², -C₁₋₄alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently CF₃ or R²;

R⁸ is selected from the group consisting of H,

94

$-NR^4R^5$, $-C(=NR^9)N(R^{10})_2$ and $-N^+(R^4)_3$,

- R^4 and R^5 are independently selected from the group consisting of: R^2 , $-C(=NR^2)N(R^2)_2$, $-C(=NCN)N(R^2)_2$, $-C(=NC(O)R^2)N(R^2)_2$,
- 5 $C(=NSO_2R^2)N(R^2)_2$, $-C(=NNO_2)NR^2$, heteroaryl, $-C(O)N(R^2)_2$,
 $-C(=S)N(R^2)_2$, $-C(O)R^2$, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl and
 $-(CH_2)_t$ -cyclopropyl, or

R^4 and R^5 are taken together and represent

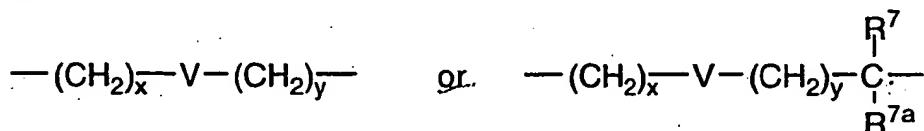
- 10 $-(CH_2)_d-L_a(CH_2)_e-$

wherein L_a is $-C(R^2)_2-$, $-O-$, $-S(O)_m-$ or $-N(R^2)-$, and d and e are independently 0 to 3 such that d plus e equals 2-6,

- and said heteroaryl and R^2 other than H being optionally substituted with 1-3 C₁₋₆alkyl groups, 1-7 halo groups, $N(R^2)_2$, OR^2 , $N(R^2)C(O)R^2$, $C(O)N(R^2)$, $OC(O)R^2$, $S(O)_mR^2$, CF_3 , OCF_3 , NO_2 , $N(R^2)C(O)(R^2)$, $N(R^2)C(O)N(R^2)_2$, $C(O)OR^2$, $C(O)N(R^2)_2$, $SO_2N(R^2)_2$, $N(R^2)SO_2R^2$ or methylenedioxy;

- 20 and R^9 and R^{10} are independently H or C₁₋₈alkyl or may be taken together and represent a C₅₋₈ ring, optionally substituted by 1-5 halo groups, OR^2 or $S(O)_mR^2$.

- 25 2. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:
Q is



and x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4.

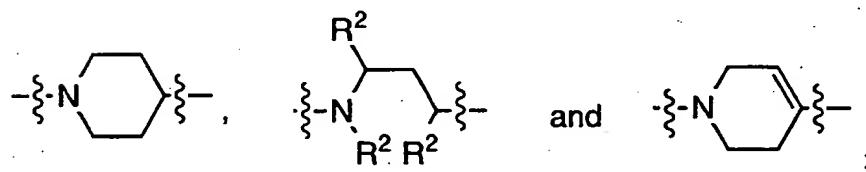
- 30 3. A compound in accordance with claim 2 wherein Q is
- $$-(CH_2)_x-V-(CH_2)_y \quad \text{or} \quad -(CH_2)_x-V-(CH_2)_y-C\begin{array}{c} R^7 \\ | \\ R^{7a} \end{array}-$$
- and x and y are independently 0, 1, 2 or 3.

95

4. A compound in accordance with claim 2 wherein V represents an aromatic or non-aromatic 3-12 membered ring system selected from the group consisting of: cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, 5 cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, phenyl and naphthyl optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R² groups, 1 to 3 halo groups, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl.

- 10 5. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:

B is selected from the group consisting of:

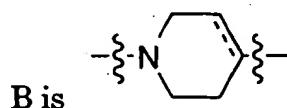


15

where attachment points are indicated by lines ^(§) external to the rings and to the open ring which are optionally substituted by C₁-C₆ alkyl.

20

6. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:



25

7. A compound in accordance with claim 5 wherein B is



8. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:

96

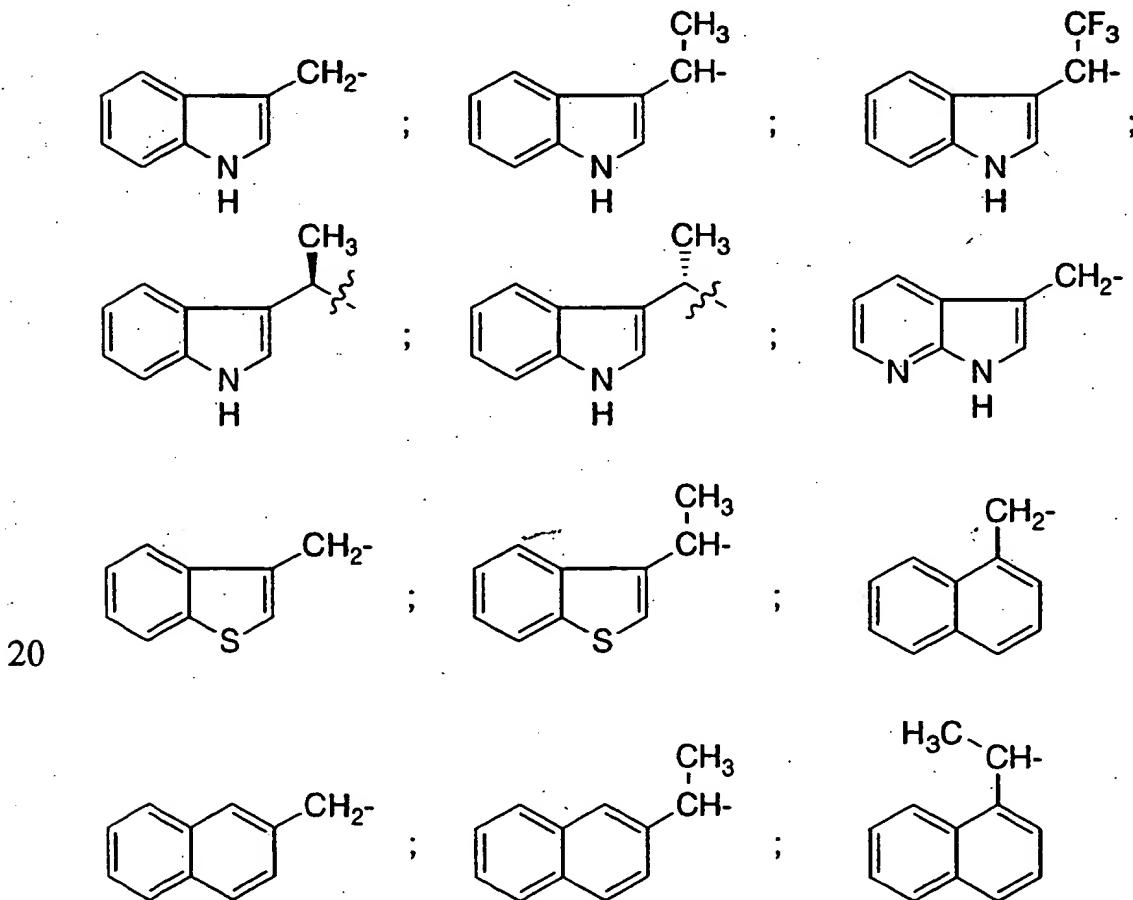
V represents a member selected from the group consisting of phenyl, cyclohexyl and cyclopentyl, which is optionally substituted with 1 to 3 halo groups, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl.

5

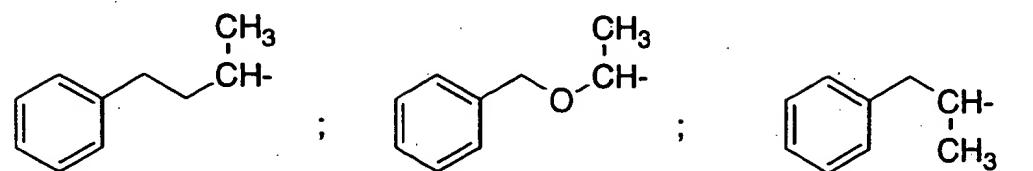
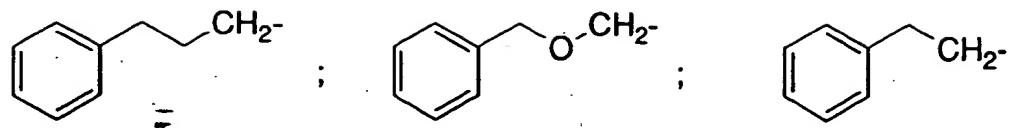
9. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein R⁸ represents H or -NR⁴R⁵.

10. A compound in accordance with claim 8 wherein R⁸ represents H or -NR⁴R⁵, and R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl and (CH₂)_t-cyclopropyl.

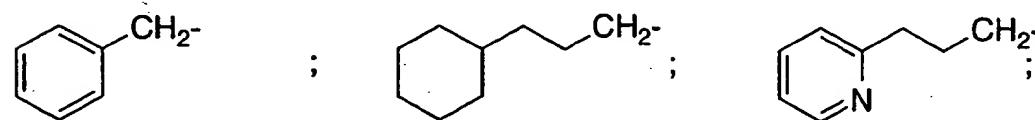
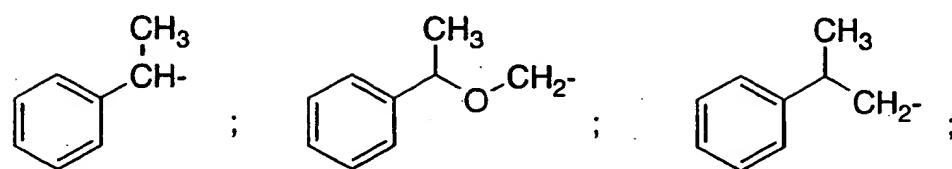
11. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:
15 R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



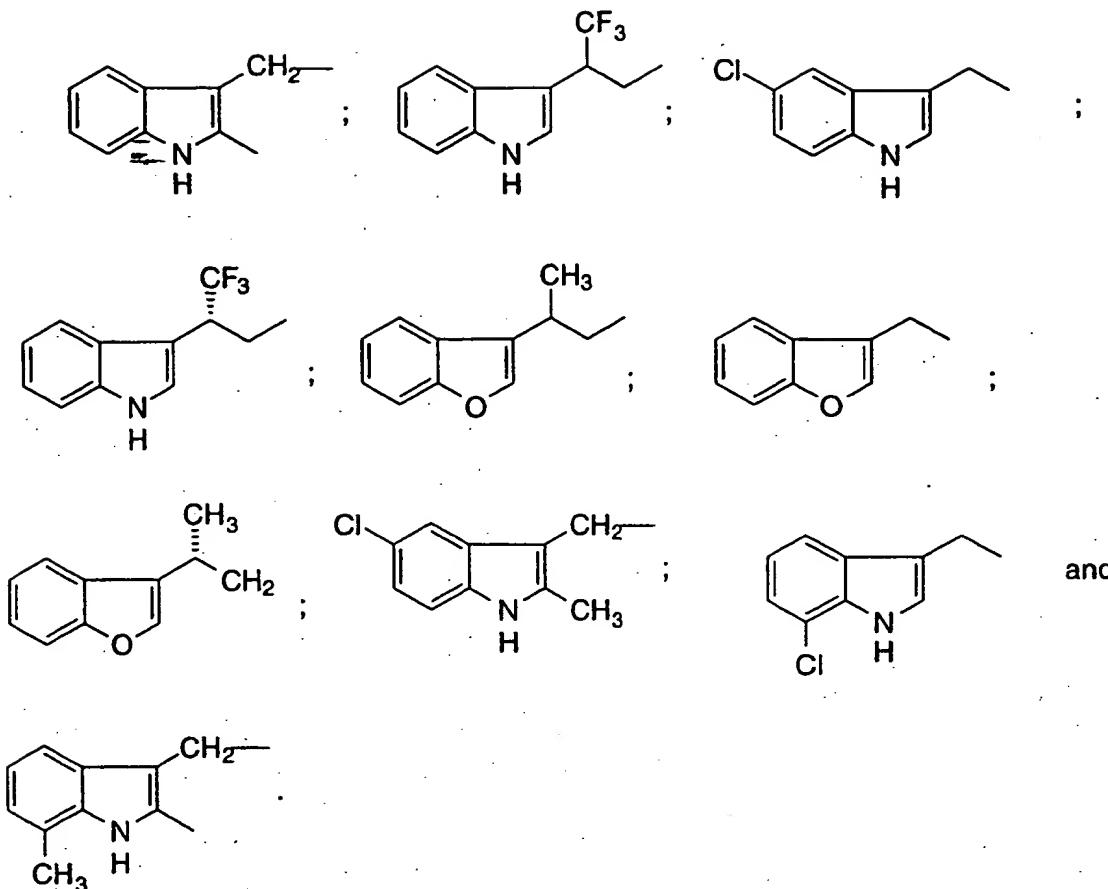
97



5



93

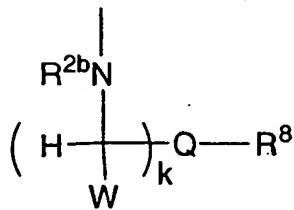


wherein the aryl portion is unsubstituted or substituted with: 1 to 3 of C₁-C₆ alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), 5 -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R².

12. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:
 R^2 is selected from: hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl and t-butyl.

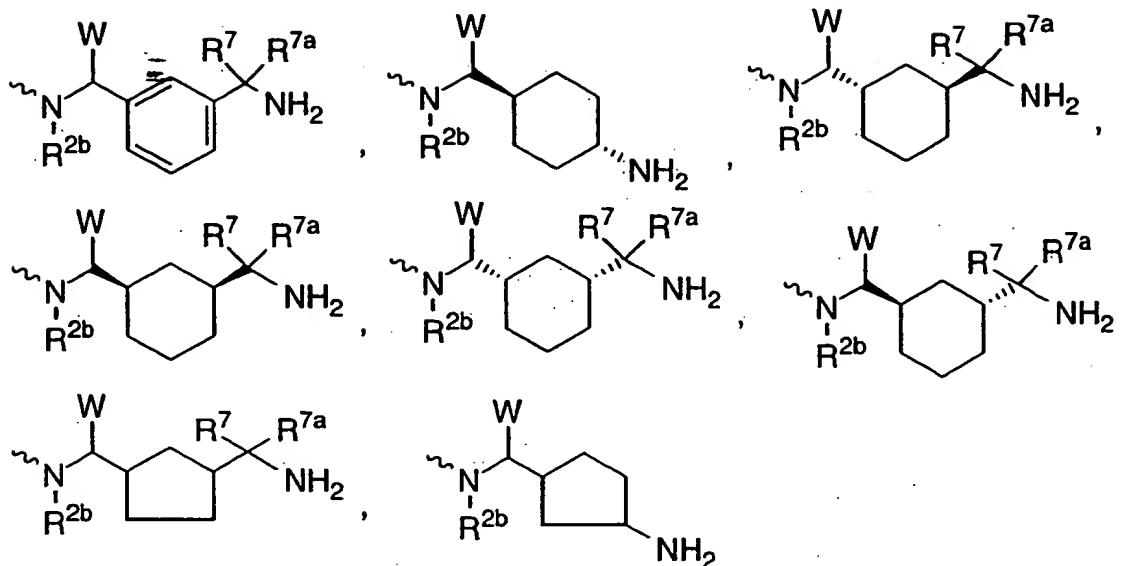
10

13. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:



is selected from the group consisting of:

99



5

in which the phenyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R² groups, 1 to 3 halo groups, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, or CF₃.

10

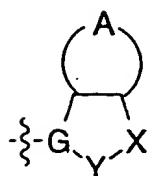
14. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein: W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₄ alkyl and (CH₂)_qC(O)OR² and q is 0, 1 or 2.

15

15. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:
E is selected from the group consisting of -CO-, -C(=N-CN)-,
and -SO₂-.

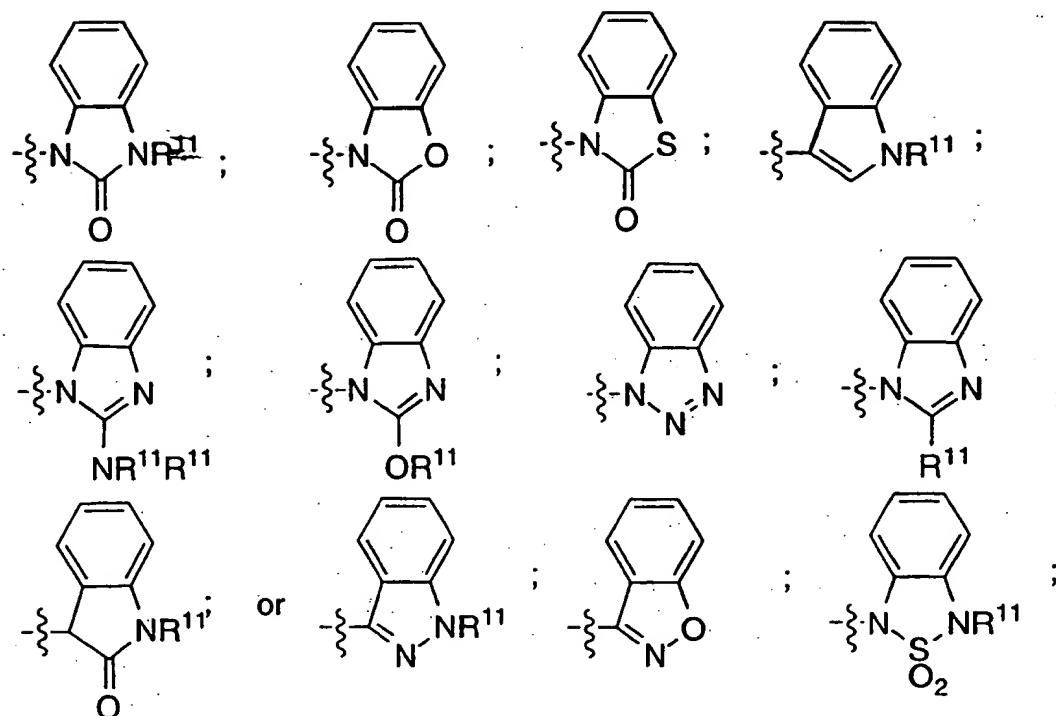
20

16. A compound in accordance with claim 1 wherein:



is selected from the group consisting of:

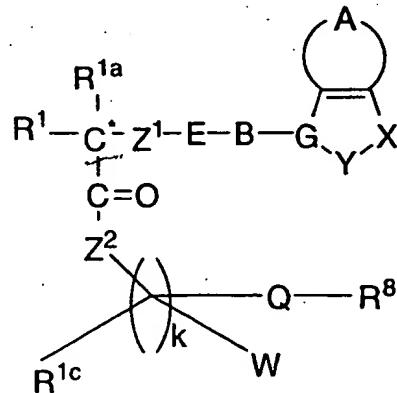
100



5 and where the aromatic rings are optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR², N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -N(R²)SO₂R².

10

17. A compound of structural formula I':



Formula I'

15 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof,

101

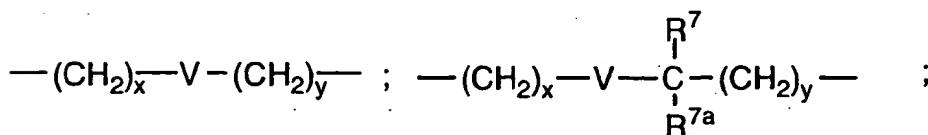
wherein

- 5 R¹ is selected from the group consisting of: C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, aryl,
 -aryl (C₁-C₆ alkyl), (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₅
 alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, aryl(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-,
 and (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, where
 K is -O-, -S(O)_m-, -N(R²)C(O)-, -C(O)N(R²)-, -CR²=CR²-, or -
 C|C-, where R² and alkyl may be further substituted by 1 to 5
 halogen, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} or C(O)OR^{2a}, and aryl is
 selected from: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl,
 isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindole, pyridyl, benzothienyl,
 benzofuranyl, thiazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and where the
 aryl is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent
 selected from: 1 to 3 of C₁-C₆ alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of
 -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃,
 nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl,
 -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or
 -N(R²)SO₂R²;
- 10 R² is selected from: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, and C₃-
 C₇ cycloalkyl, and where two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups are
 present on one atom, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-
 C₈ cyclic ring, optionally including oxygen, sulfur or NR^{3a},
 where R^{3a} is hydrogen, or C₁-C₆ alkyl, optionally
 substituted by hydroxyl; Aryl is defined in the body of the
 case.
- 15 R^{1a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C₁-C₃
 alkyl;
- 20 R^{2a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₃
 alkyl, said alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxyl;
- 25 R^{2b} is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl,

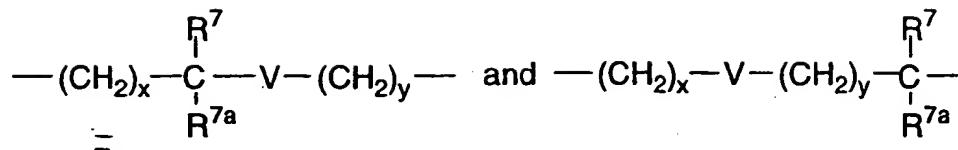
102

$-(CH_2)_nCO_2R^2$, $-(CH_2)_nCON(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_nOH$, $(CH_2)_nCF_3$,
 $(CH_2)_t$ heteroaryl or $-(CH_2)_nOR^2$;

- 5 R^{1c} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-(CH_2)_qSR^2$,
 $-(CH_2)_qOR^2$ and C₁-C₈ alkyl;
- 10 Z¹ is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂- and -NR^{2a};
- 10 Z² is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂-, -CHR^{2b}-
and -NR^{2b}, when Z² is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to
R^{1c}, Q and/or W to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring, which can
optionally be interrupted by oxygen, S(O)_m or NR^{2a};
- 15 W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₈
alkyl, $(CH_2)_t$ aryl, $-(CH_2)_qC(O)OR^2$, $-(CH_2)_qOR^2$,
 $-(CH_2)_qOC(O)R^2$, $-(CH_2)_qC(O)R^2$, $-(CH_2)_qC(O)(CH_2)_t$ aryl, -
 $(CH_2)_qC(O)N(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)C(O)R^2$,
 $(CH_2)_qN(R^2)SO_2R^2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)C(O)N(R^2)_2$, -
 $(CH_2)_qOC(O)N(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_qN(R^2)C(O)OR^2$, -
 $(CH_2)_qN(R^2)SO_2N(R^2)_2$, $-(CH_2)_qS(O)_mR^2$, and $(CH_2)_t$
heteroaryl where the heteroaryl is preferably tetrazole,
oxadiazole, thiadiazole, triazole or pyrazine, which is
optionally substituted with R², N(R²)₂ and OR², where R²,
(CH₂)_q and (CH₂)_t are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁-
C₄ alkyl, OR², C(O)OR², 1-3 halo and said aryl is optionally
substituted with 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR²,
C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-
yl;
- 30 Q is selected from the group consisting of:



103

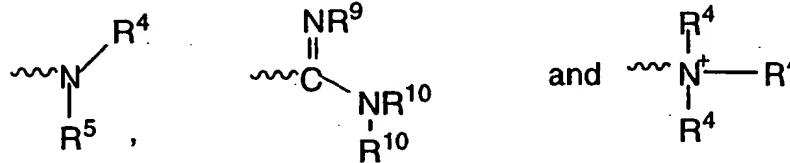


where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6;

- 5 V is a C3-8 nonaromatic cyclic or bicyclic ring or an aromatic such as benzene, naphthalene; said aromatic or non aromatic ring can be optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R², 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl; and in the case
 10 where diastereo- or regio- isomers are present, all are included;

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R²;

- 15 R₈ is selected from the group consisting of



- 20 R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of R², -C(=NR²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NCN)N(R²)₂, -C(=NC(O)R²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NSO₂R²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NNO₂)NR², heteroaryl, (CH₂)_nCO₂R², -C(=O)N(R²)₂, -C(=S)N(R²)₂, -C(=O)R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, (CH₂)_t cyclopropyl, or R⁴ and R⁵ may be taken together to form -(CH₂)_d-L_a(CH₂)_e- where L_a is -C(R²)₂- , -O-, -S(O)_m- or -N(R²)-, d and e are independently 1 to 3, said heteroaryl and R² optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-6 alkyl, 1-7 halo, N(R²)₂, OR², N(R²)C(O)R², C(O)N(R²), OC(O)R², S(O)_mR², CF₃, OCF₃, NO₂, N(R²)C(O)(R²), N(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, C(O)OR², C(O)N(R²)₂, SO₂N(R²)₂, N(R²)SO₂R², or methylenedioxy;
 25

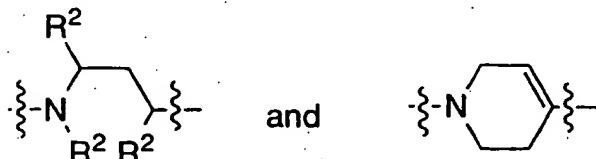
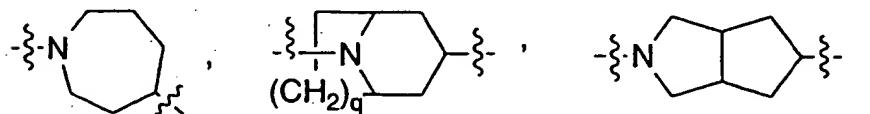
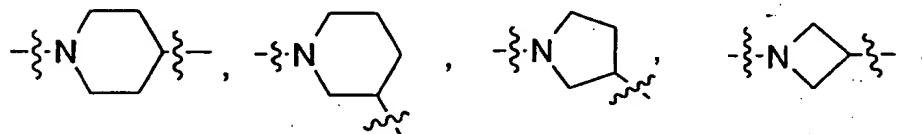
104

and the heteroaryl is pyridyl, imidazolyl, pyrimidinyl, thiazolyl or pyrazinyl;

5 E is selected from the group consisting of $-\text{SO}_2-$, $-\text{CO}(\text{C}(R^2)_2)_n-$, $-\text{C}(=\text{N}-\text{CN})-$, $-\text{C}(=\text{N}-\text{NO}_2)-$ and $-\text{C}(=\text{N}-\text{SO}_2\text{N}(R^2)_2)-$;

R⁹ & R¹⁰ are independently H, C₁-8 alkyl or may be taken together to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring, which can optionally be substituted by 1-5 halogen, OR² or S(O)_mR²;

10 B is selected from the group consisting of a noncyclic, heterocyclic or heterobicyclic ring selected from the group consisting of



15

where attachment points are indicated by lines (§) external to the rings and to the open ring which are optionally substituted by C₁-C₆ alkyl and where R² and (CH₂)_q are described above;

20

G is N, CH or C=;

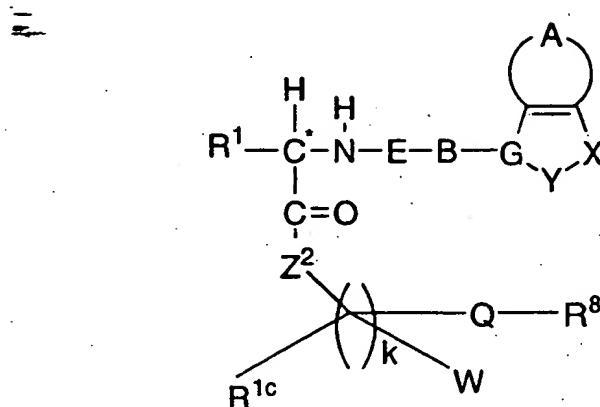
Y is $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{SO}_2-$, $-\text{C}(\text{OR}^{11})=$, $-\text{C}(\text{SR}^{11})=$, $-\text{C}(\text{NR}^{11})=$, $=\text{N}-$, $\text{N}(\text{R}^{11})-$, $=\text{NC}(\text{O})-$, or $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{11})_2-$;

105

- X is -N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-,
-O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;
- 5 R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂,
(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², (CH₂)₂
heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -
(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is
10 tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are
optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and
where p is 0-3;
- A is a fused aryl or heteroaryl group 1-4 atoms of which are
heteroatoms of N, O and/or S; cycloalkyl; or heterocycloalkyl
15 group, 1-3 atoms of which are heteroatoms N, O and/or S,
said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group
containing from 5 to 10 atoms and being optionally
substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR²,
N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -
20 N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -
SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -
N(R²)SO₂R², and in the case where regioisomers are
present, all are included;
- 25 k is an integer from 0 to 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to
Z²;
- m is an integer from 0 to 2;
- 30 n is an integer from 0 to 3;
- q is an integer from 0 to 3; and
- t is an integer from 0 to 3.

106

18. A compound according to Claim 1 having a structural formula Ib:



5 Formula Ib

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof, wherein:

- R¹ is selected from the group consisting of: C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, aryl, aryl (C₁-C₆ alkyl), (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, aryl(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, and (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-K-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, where K is -O-, -S(O)_m-, -N(R²)C(O)-, -C(O)N(R²)-, -CR²=CR²-, or -C|C-, where R² and alkyl may be further substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} or C(O)OR^{2a}, and aryl is selected from: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindole, pyridyl, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, thiazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and where the aryl is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent selected from: 1 to 3 of C₁-C₆ alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;
- R² is selected from: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, and C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl, and where two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups are

107

present on one atom, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-C₈ cyclic ring, optionally including oxygen, sulfur or NR^{3a}, where R^{3a} is hydrogen, or C₁-C₆ alkyl, optionally substituted by hydroxyl;

5

R^{2a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₃ alkyl, said alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxyl;

Z² is selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂-, -CHR^{2b} and -NR^{2b}, when Z² is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to R^{1c}, Q and/or W to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring, which can optionally be interrupted by oxygen, S(O)_m or NR^{2a};

R^{2b} is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_nCO₂R², -(CH₂)_nCON(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_nOH, (CH₂)_nCF₃, (CH₂)_t heteroaryl or -(CH₂)_nOR²;

R^{1c} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C₁-C₈ alkyl;

20

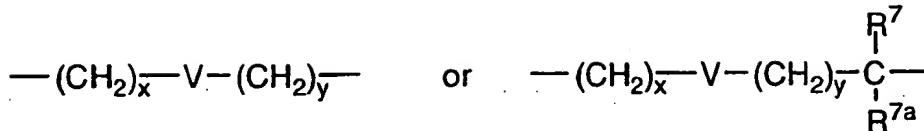
W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qOR², -(CH₂)_qOC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)(CH₂)_taryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qOC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qS(O)_mR², and (CH₂)_t heteroaryl where the heteroaryl is preferably tetrazole, oxadiazole, thiadiazole, triazole or pyrazine, which is optionally substituted with R², N(R²)₂ and OR², where R², (CH₂)_q and (CH₂)_t are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁-C₄ alkyl, OR², C(O)OR², 1-3 halo and said aryl is optionally substituted with 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

25

30

108

Q is



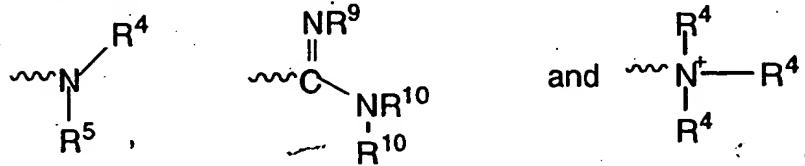
5

where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3, 4;

- V is a C₃-8 nonaromatic cyclic or bicyclic ring consisting of , cyclopropane, cyclobutane, cyclopentane, cyclohexane, cycloheptane, cyclooctane; or an aromatic such as benzene, naphthalene; said aromatic or non aromatic ring can be optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R², 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, or where Q and R⁸ can be lined to form a C₃-8 cyclic ring; and in the case where diastereo- or regio- isomers are present, all are included;

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R²;

- 20 R⁸ is selected from the group consisting of



- 25 R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of R², -C(=NR²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NCN)N(R²)₂, -C(=NC(O)R²)N(R²)₂, C(=NSO₂R²)N(R²)₂, -C(=NNO₂)NR², heteroaryl, (CH₂)_nCO₂R² -C(=O)N(R²)₂, -C(=S)N(R²)₂, -C(=O)R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, (CH₂)_t cyclopropyl, or R⁴ and R⁵ may be taken together to form -(CH₂)_d-La(CH₂)_e-

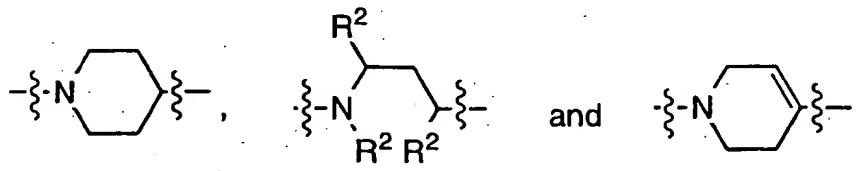
109

where L_a is $-C(R^2)_2-$, $-O-$, $-S(O)_m-$ or $-N(R^2)-$, d and e are independently 1 to 3, said heteroaryl and R^2 optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-6 alkyl, 1-7 halo, $N(R^2)_2$, $=OR^2$, $N(R^2)C(O)R^2$, $C(O)N(R^2)$, $OC(O)R^2$, $S(O)_mR^2$, CF_3 , OCF_3 , NO_2 , $N(R^2)C(O)(R^2)$, $N(R^2)C(O)N(R^2)_2$, $C(O)OR^2$, $C(O)N(R^2)_2$, $SO_2N(R^2)_2$, $N(R^2)SO_2R^2$, or methylenedioxy; and the heteroaryl is pyridyl, imidazolyl, pyrimidinyl, thiazolyl or pyrazinyl;

10 E is selected from the group consisting of $-SO_2-$, $-CO(C(R^2)_2)_n-$, $-C(=N-CN)-$, $-C(=N-NO_2)-$ and $-C(=N-SO_2N(R^2)_2)-$;

15 R⁹ & R¹⁰ are independently H, C₁-8 alkyl or may be taken together to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring, which can optionally be substituted by 1-5 halogen, OR^2 or $S(O)_mR^2$;

B is selected from the group consisting of a noncyclic or heterocyclic selected from the group consisting of



where attachment points are indicated by lines (§) external to the rings and to the open ring which are optionally substituted by C₁-C₆ alkyl and where R² and $(CH_2)_q$ are described above;

25 G is N, CH or C=;

Y is $-C(O)-$, $-SO_2-$, $-C(OR^{11})=$, $-C(SR^{11})=$, $-C(NR^{11})=$, $=N-$, $N(R^{11})-$, $=NC(O)-$, or $-C(R^{11})_2-$;

30

110

X is -N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-,
-O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;

R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂,
(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², (CH₂)₂
heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -
(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is
tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are
optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and
where p is 0-3;

A is a fused aryl or heteroaryl group 1-4 atoms of which are
heteroatoms of N, O and/or S; cycloalkyl; or heterocycloalkyl
group, 1-3 atoms of which are heteroatoms N, O and/or S,
said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group
containing from 5 to 10 atoms and being optionally
substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR²,
N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -
N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -
SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -
N(R²)SO₂R², and in the case where regioisomers are
present, all are included;

k is an integer from 0 to 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to
25 Z²;

m is an integer from 0 to 2;

n is an integer from 0 to 3;

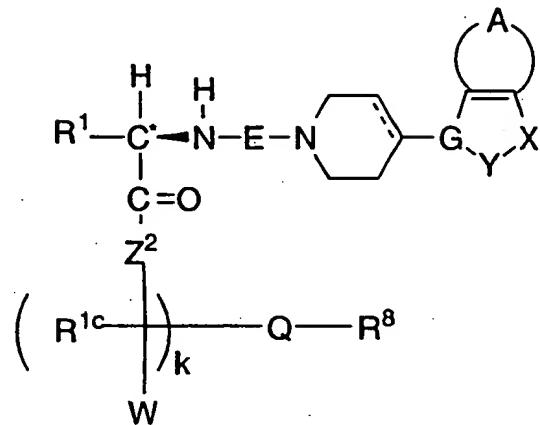
30

q is an integer from 0 to 3; and

t is an integer from 0 to 3.

111

19. A compound according to Claim 1 represented by structural formula Ic:



5

Formula Ic

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof,
wherein:

- 10 R¹ is selected from the group consisting of: C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, aryl, aryl(C₁-C₆ alkyl), (C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₅ alkyl)-O-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, and aryl(C₀-C₅ alkyl)-O-(C₁-C₅ alkyl)-, where R² and alkyl may be further substituted by 1 to 5 halogen, S(O)_mR^{2a}, 1 to 3 of OR^{2a} or C(O)OR^{2a}, and aryl is selected from: phenyl, naphthyl, biphenyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, azaindole, pyridyl, benzothienyl, benzofuranyl, thiazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and where the aryl is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent selected from: 1 to 3 of C₁-C₆ alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;
- 15 R² is selected from: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, and C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl, and where two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups are

// 2

present on one atom, they optionally are joined to form a C₃-C₈ cyclic ring, optionally including oxygen, sulfur or NR^{3a}, where R^{3a} is hydrogen, or C₁-C₆ alkyl, optionally substituted by hydroxyl;

5

R^{2a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₃ alkyl, said alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxyl;

10
Z² is

selected from the group consisting of -O-, -CH₂-, -CHR^{2b}. and -NR^{2b}, when Z² is NR^{2b} it can optionally be linked to

R^{1c}, Q and/or W to form a C₅-8 cyclic ring;

15
R^{2b} is

selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_nCO₂R², -(CH₂)_nCON(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_nOH, (CH₂)_nCF₃, (CH₂)_t heteroaryl or -(CH₂)_nOR²,

R^{1c} is

selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C₁-C₈ alkyl;

20
W is

selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, (CH₂)_t aryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)OR², -(CH₂)_qOR², -(CH₂)_qOC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)R², -(CH₂)_qC(O)(CH₂)_taryl, -(CH₂)_qC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂R², -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qOC(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qN(R²)C(O)OR²,

25

(CH₂)_qN(R²)SO₂N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_qS(O)_mR², and (CH₂)_t heteroaryl where the heteroaryl is preferably tetrazole,

oxadiazole, thiadiazole, triazole or pyrazine, which is

optionally substituted with R², N(R²)₂ and OR², where R²,

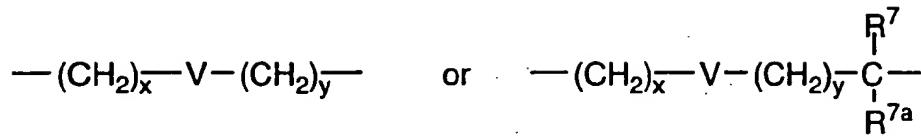
30

(CH₂)_q and (CH₂)_t are optionally substituted with 1 to 2 C₁-C₄ alkyl, OR², C(O)OR², 1-3 halo and said aryl is optionally substituted with 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR²,

C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl;

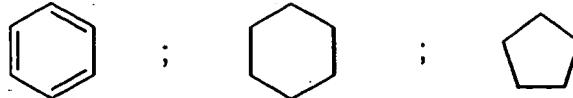
// 3

Q is



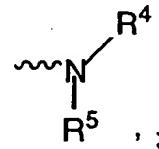
5 where x and y are independently 0, 1, 2, 3;

V is



10 said the aromatic or non aromatic ring can be optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R², 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, CF₃ or 1H-tetrazol-5-yl, and in the case where diastereo- or regio- isomers are present, all are included;

15 R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R²;

R⁸ is

20 R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from the group consisting of R², 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, (CH₂)_t cyclopropyl or (CH₂)_nCO₂R²;

E is selected from the group consisting of -SO₂-, -CO-, -C(=N-CN)-, -C(=N-NO₂)- and -C(=N-SO₂NH₂)-;

25 R⁹ and R¹⁰ are independently H or C₁-8 alkyl;

114

G is N, CH or C=;

Y is -C(O)-, -SO₂-, -C(OR¹¹)=, -C(SR¹¹)=, -C(NR¹¹)=, =N-, N(R¹¹)-, =NC(O)-, or -C(R¹¹)₂-;

5

X is -N(R¹¹)-, =N-, =N-C(R¹¹)₂-, -N(R¹¹)C(R¹¹)₂-, -O-, -O-C(R¹¹)₂-, -S-, -S-C(R¹¹)₂- or C(R¹¹)₂;

R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂, (CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², (CH₂)₂ heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and where p is 0-3;

15

A is a fused aryl or heteroaryl group 1-4 atoms of which are heteroatoms of N, O and/or S; cycloalkyl; or heterocycloalkyl group, 1-3 atoms of which are heteroatomseteroatoms N, O and/or S, said aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group containing from 5 to 10 atoms and being optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR², N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -N(R²)SO₂R², and in the case where regioisomers are present, all are included;

k is an integer from 0 to 1, such that when k is 0, Q is attached directly to
30 Z₂;

m is an integer from 0 to 2;

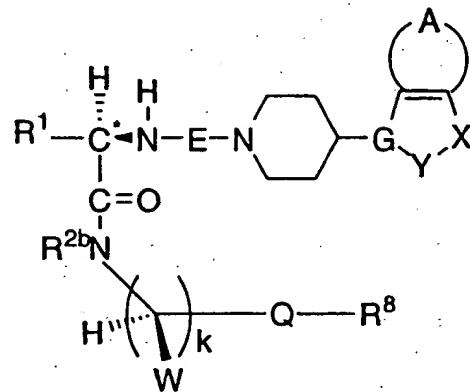
n is an integer from 0 to 3;

115

q is an integer from 0 to 3; and

t is an integer from 0 to 3.

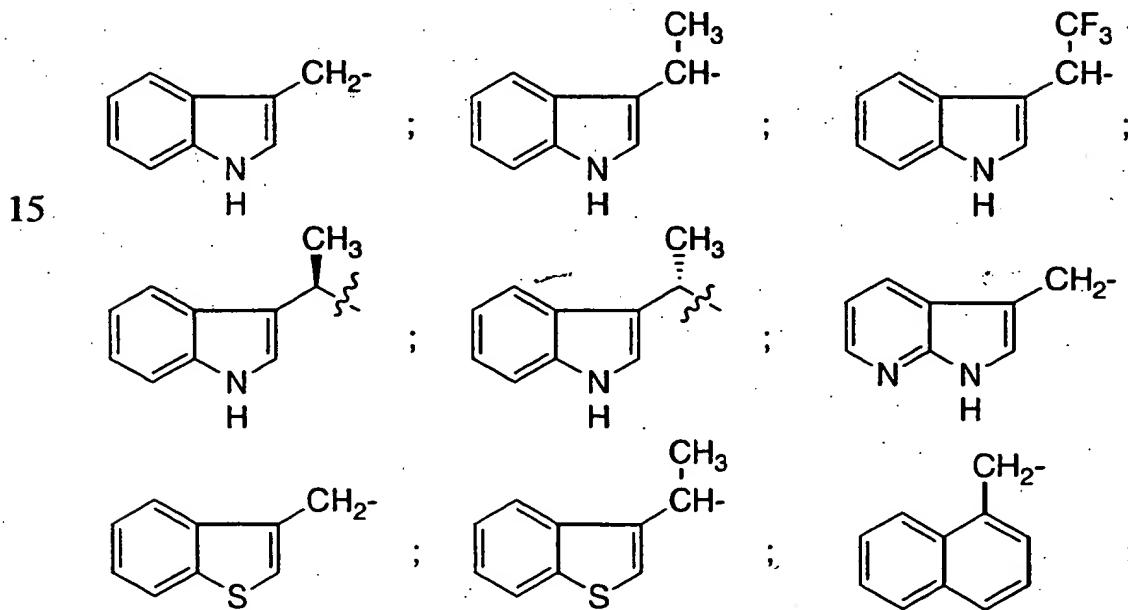
- 5 20. A compound according to Claim 1 having the
Formula Id:



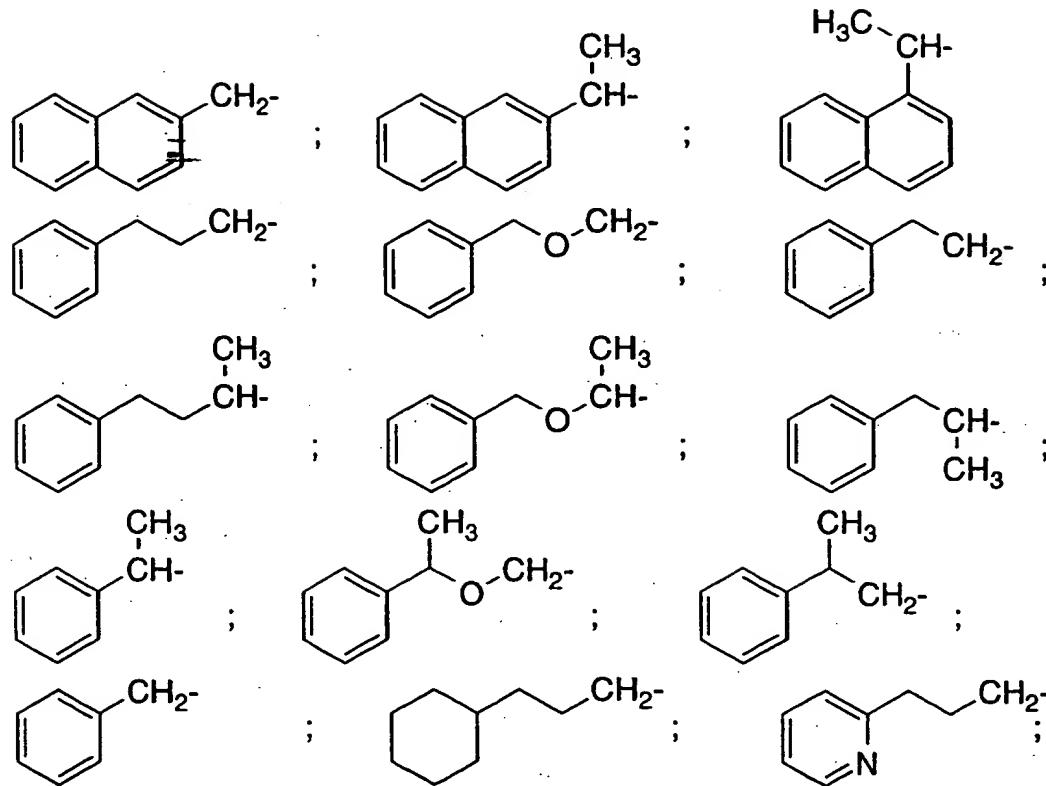
Formula Id

- 10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof,
wherein

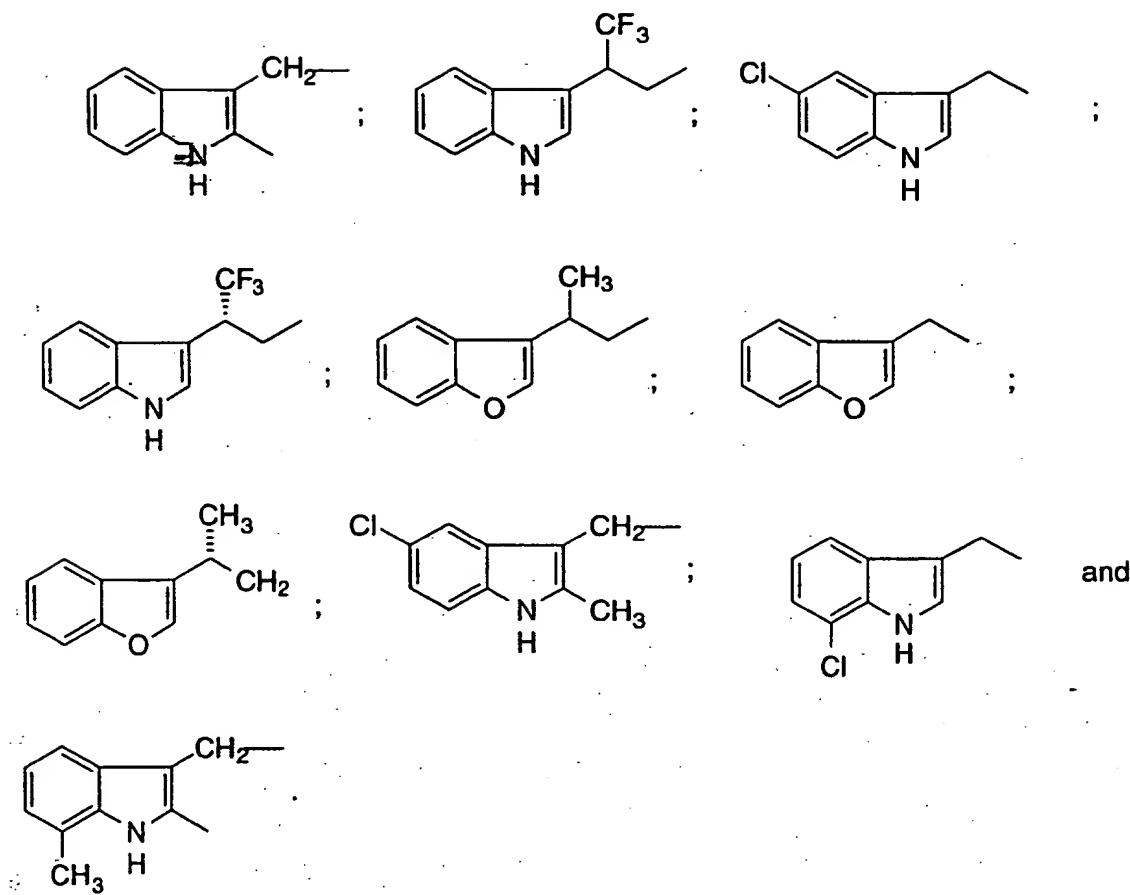
R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



116

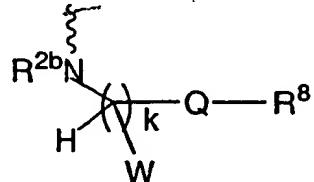


117

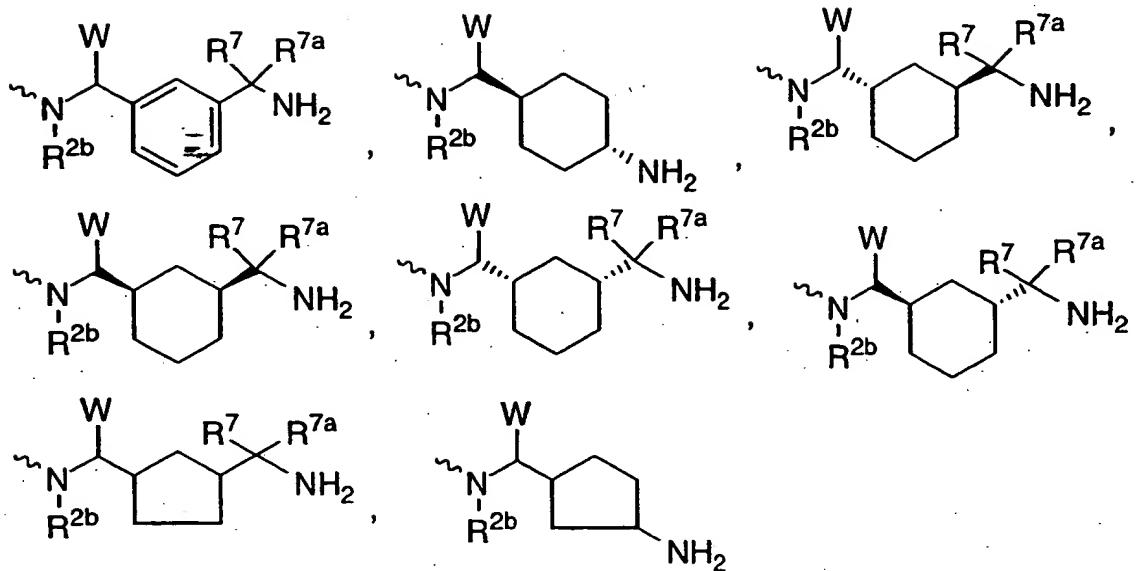


where the aryl is unsubstituted or substituted with a substituent selected from: 1 to 3 of C1-C6 alkyl, 1 to 3 of halogen, 1 to 2 of -OR², methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², 1 to 2 of -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)(R²), -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)(R²), -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

R² is selected from: hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, t-butyl;



10



5 and the phenyl or cycloalkyl groups can be optionally substituted with 1 to 2 R₂, 1 to 3 halogen, -OR², -CON(R²)₂, -C(O)OR², C₁-C₄ alkyl, -S(O)_mR², N(R²)₂, or CF₃; and in the case where diastereo- or regioisomers are present, all are included;

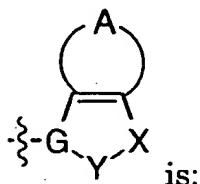
10 W is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, C₁-C₄ alkyl or (CH₂)_qC(O)OR²;

R⁷ and R^{7a} are independently trifluoromethyl or R²;

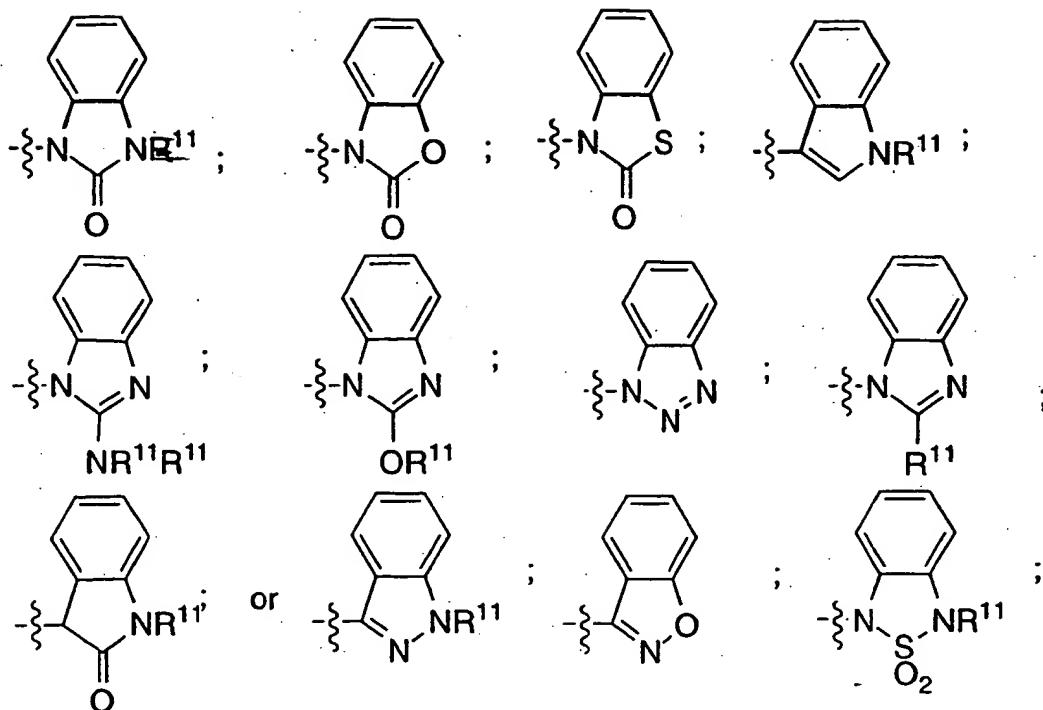
15 R^{2b} is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₄ alkyl, (CH₂)_nCF₃ or (CH₂)_t heteroaryl;

E is selected from the group consisting of -CO-, -C(=N-CN)-, and -SO₂;

20



119



where the aromatic can be optionally substituted with 1-3 groups of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halogen, -OR², N(R²)₂, methylenedioxy, -S(O)_mR², -CF₃, -OCF₃, nitro, -N(R²)C(O)(R²), -C(O)OR², -C(O)N(R²)₂, -1H-tetrazol-5-yl, -SO₂N(R²)₂, -N(R²)SO₂ phenyl, N(R²)C(O)N(R²) or -N(R²)SO₂R²;

- 5 R¹¹ is H, C₁-C₈ alkyl, CF₃, CH₂CF₃, -(CH₂)_pOR², -(CH₂)_pN(R²)₂, (CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)N(R²)₂, -(CH₂)_pN(R²)C(O)R², (CH₂)_p heteroaryl, (CH₂)_pN(R²)SO₂C₁-C₄ alkyl, -(CH₂)_pC(O)N(R²)₂, or -(CH₂)_pC(O)OR² where heteroaryl is tetrazole, oxadiazole, imidazole or triazole which are optionally substituted with R², OR², CF₃ or N(R²)₂ and where p is 0-3;

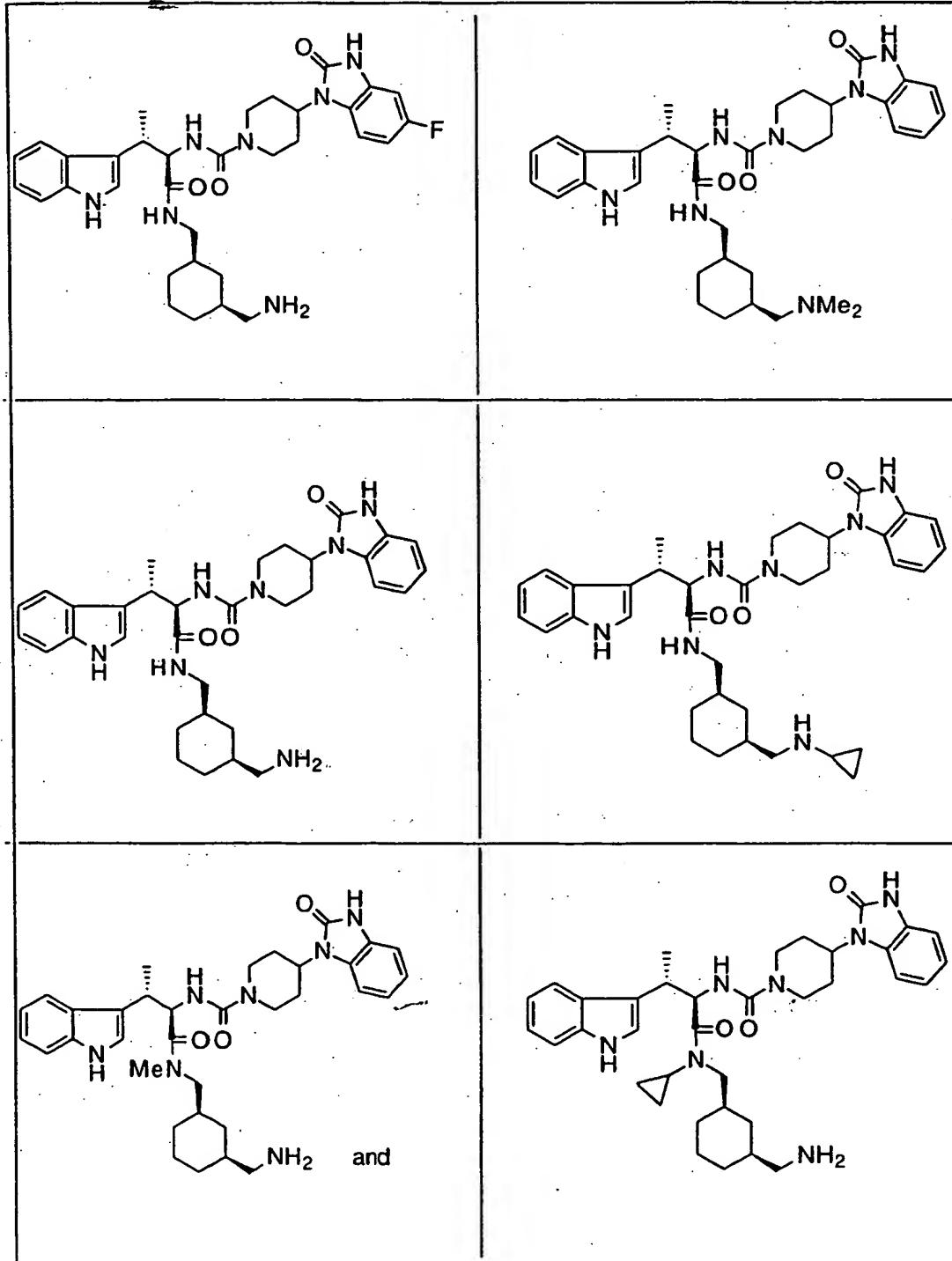
10 m is an integer from 0 to 2;

15 n is an integer from 0 to 3; and

20 q is an integer from 0 to 3.

120

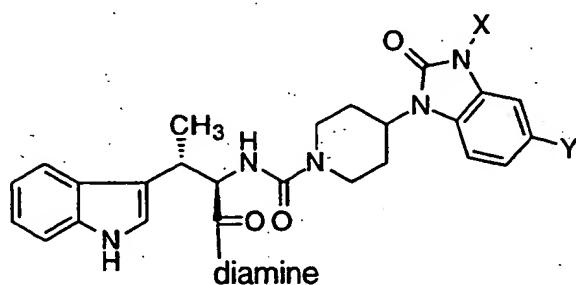
21. A compound according to Claim 1 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof, which is selected from:



121

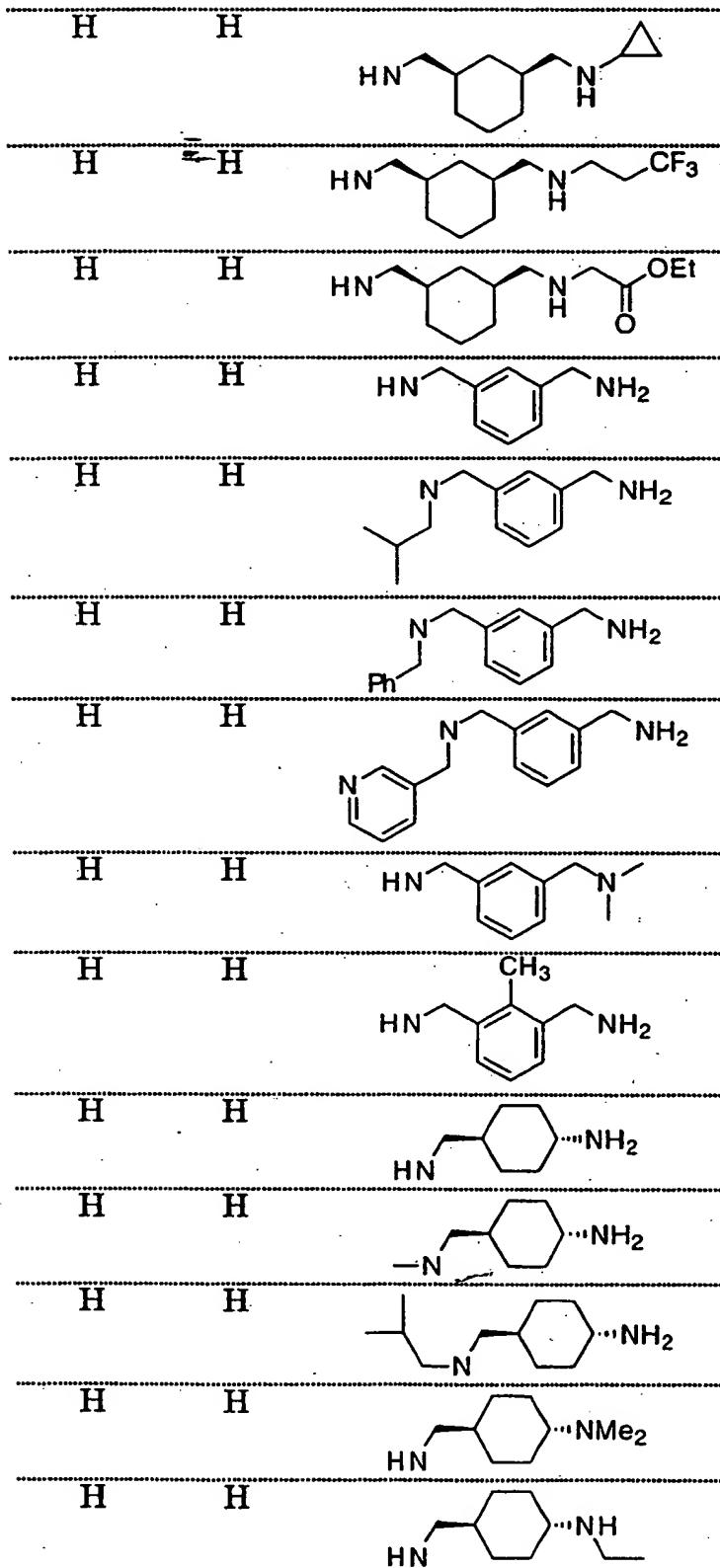
22. A compound according to Claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof, depicted in Table I below:

5

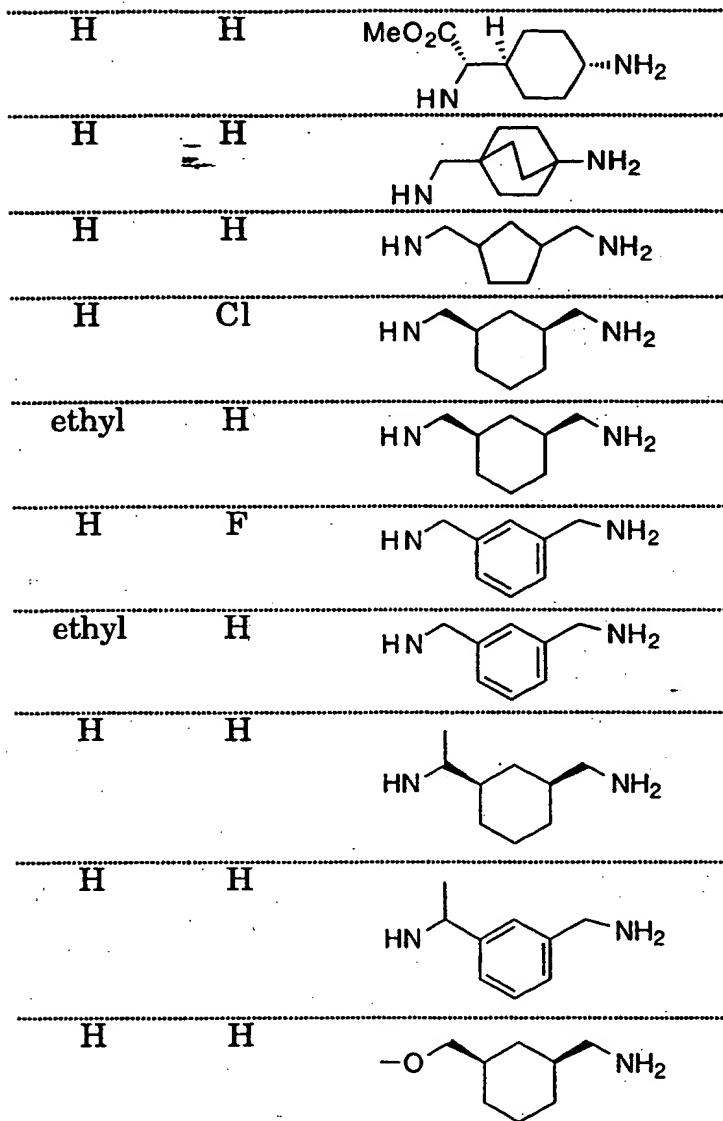


X	Y	diamine
H	H	
H	H	
H	H	
H	H	
H	H	
H	H	
H	H	
H	H	
H	H	

122



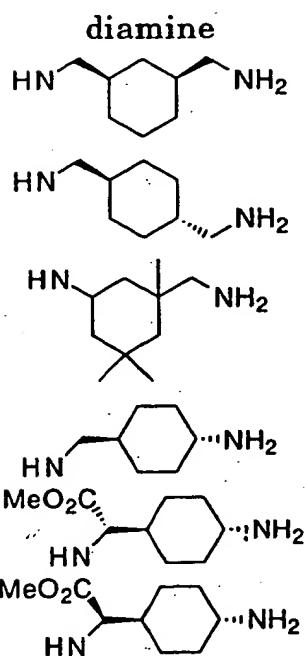
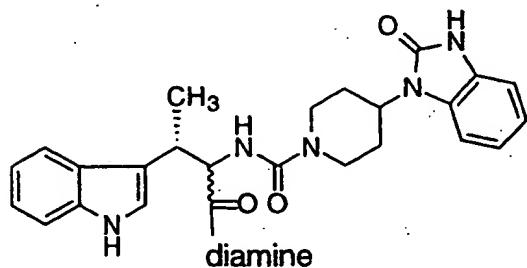
123



124

23. A compound according to Claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or hydrate thereof, depicted in Table II below:

5



24. A method of treating diabetes disease in a mammal in need of such treatment, which comprises administering to said 10 mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist.

15

25. A method of treating diabetes disease in a mammal in need of such treatment, which comprises administering to said mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of Claim 1.

26. A method of treating diabetes disease in a mammal in need of such treatment, which comprises administering to said

mammal an effective amount of an orally active somatostatin agonist of Claim 1.

27. A method of treating acromegaly in a mammal in need of such treatment, which comprises administering to said mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of Claim 1.

28. A method of treating restenosis in a mammal in need of such treatment, which comprises administering to said mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of Claim 1.

29. A method of treating or preventing depression in a mammal in need of such treatment, which comprises administering to said mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist.

30. A method of treating or preventing depression in a mammal in need of such treatment, which comprises administering to said mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of Claim 1.

31. A method of treating cancer in a mammal in need of such treatment which comprises administering to such mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of claim 1.

32. A method of treating irritable bowel syndrome in a mammal in need of such treatment which comprises administering to such mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of claim 1.

33. A method of treating pain in a mammal in need of such treatment which comprises administering to such mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of claim 1.

34. A method of treating diabetic retinopathy in a mammal in need of such treatment which comprises administering to such mammal an effective amount of a somatostatin agonist of claim 1.

106

35. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound according to claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/06465

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) :Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL :Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : Please See Extra Sheet.

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

CAS-structure

APS-imagine

dialog-somatostatin agonists

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	US 4,242,347 A (HUEBNER) 30 December 1980, see entire document.	1-35
A	US 4,310,518 A (FREIDINGER et al.) 12 January 1982, see entire document.	1-35
A	US 5,360,807 A (JANSSENS et al.) 01 November 1994, see entire document.	1-35
A	Chem. Abstr., Vol. 119, No. 23, 06 December 1993 (Columbus, OH, USA), page 69, column 1, the abstract No. 119:241372d, CAVANAK, T. et al. 'Treating breast cancer with somatostatin analogs'. Pat. Specif. (Aust.) AU 639,371.	1-35

 Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.

See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	"T"	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"X"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"E" earlier document published on or after the international filing date	"Y"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"&"	document member of the same patent family
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search

05 JUNE 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

11 AUG 1998

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

CELIA CHANG

Telephone No. (703) 308-1255



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/06465

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A,P	Chem. Abstr. Vol. 128, No. 2, 12 January 1998 (Columbus, OH, USA), page 386, column 1 the abstract No. 128:13436h, MACCOSS, M. et al. 'Preparation of tryptophan urea derivatives as tachykinin receptor antagonists'. Brit. UK Pat. Appl. GB 2,311,532, 06 June 1996.	1-35
A,E	Chem. abstr. Vol. 128, No. 19, 11 May 1998, (Columbus OH USA) page 604, column 2, the abstract No. 128:230701v, RUDOLF, K. et al. 'Preparation of varied aminoacids as calcitonin gene-related peptide antagonists in pharmaceutical compositions. Gen. Offen. DE 19,636,623, 10 September 1996.	1-35